CAMBRIDGE

全球畅销

English Pronunciation in Use Elementary

剑桥国际英语语音在用（初级）

自学或课堂用书

附赠CD-ROM光盘
（含MP3录音，英音为主）

Jonathan Marks 编著

北京语言大学出版社
BEIJING LANGUAGE AND CULTURE UNIVERSITY PRESS

VISIT…

LANZAROTE Caliente.com

English Pronunciation in Use

Elementary

剑桥国际英语语音在用（初级）

自学或课堂用书

Jonathan Marks 编著

姚 虹 张 丽 译

北京语言大学出版社
BEIJING LANGUAGE AND CULTURE UNIVERSITY PRESS

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

图书在版编目 (CIP) 数据

剑桥国际英语语音在用. 初级 / (英) 马科斯 (Marks, J.) 编著; 姚虹, 张丽译.
—北京: 北京语言大学出版社, 2012. 7

ISBN 978-7-5619-3326-8

Ⅰ. ①剑… Ⅱ. ①马… ②姚… ③张… Ⅲ. ①英语—语音—自学参考资料 Ⅳ. ①H311

中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字(2012)第171237号

北京市版权局著作权合同登记号: 01-2012-2159号

English Pronunciation in Use (Elementary) with Answers, Audio CDs and CD-ROM [978-0-521-69373-8] by Jonathan Marks and Sylvie Donna is first published by Cambridge University Press in 2007. All rights reserved.
This simplified Chinese edition for the People's Republic of China is published by arrangement with the Press Syndicate of the University of Cambridge, Cambridge, United Kingdom.
© Cambridge University Press & Beijing Language and Culture University Press 2012.
This book is in copyright. No reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press or Beijing Language and Culture University Press.
本书版权由剑桥大学出版社和北京语言大学出版社共同所有。本书任何部分之文字及图片，如未获得出版者书面同意，不得用任何方式抄袭、节录或翻印。
This edition is for sale in the People's Republic of China (excluding Hong Kong SAR, Macau SAR and Taiwan Province) only.
此版本仅限在中华人民共和国境内（不包括香港、澳门特别行政区及台湾省）销售。

书　　名：剑桥国际英语语音在用（初级）
责任印制：陈　辉

出版发行：北京语言大学出版社
社　　址：北京市海淀区学院路15号　　邮政编码：100083
网　　址：www.blcup.com
电　　话：发行部 010-82303648 / 3591 / 3651
编辑部 010-82301019
读者服务部 010-82303653 / 3908
网上订购电话 010-82303668
客户服务信箱 service@blcup.net
印　　刷：北京中科印刷有限公司
经　　销：全国新华书店

版　　次：2012年7月第1版 2012年7月第1次印刷
开　　本：787毫米×1092毫米 1/16　　印张：10.5
字　　数：285千字
书　　号：ISBN 978-7-5619-3326-8/ H · 12108
定　　价：29.90元

凡有印装质量问题，本社负责调换。电话：82303590

出版说明

相信很多英语学习者有过这样的苦恼：同样的一个英语句子，写在纸上别人很容易看懂，但自己说出来别人却听不明白；同样的一段英语对白，加上字幕很容易理解，但没有字幕听起来就有困难。无论是说英语还是听英语，没有掌握良好的语音技能都会严重影响学习者使用英语交流的效果。

剑桥大学出版社出版的*English Pronunciation in Use*是专门为非英语母语学习者编写的英语语音学习用书。自面市以来已被引进到多个国家，被视为系统学习英语语音必不可少的经典系列教材。在中国，这套教材也已经被很多读者熟知并深受好评。为了满足我国广大英语学习者的需求，我社将这套图书引进并改编为英汉双语版，命名为《剑桥国际英语语音在用》。

本套教材包含三个级别：初级、中级、高级。这三个级别的内容自成体系而深度逐渐增加。学习者可以根据自己的语言水平从任何一个级别开始学习。

本书为《剑桥国际英语语音在用（初级）》，旨在帮助英语学习者学习语音、语调，同步提高口语听力理解的能力。本书主要适用于初级水平的英语学习者。

本书结构编排：

本书共有50个单元，每个单元都侧重不同的语音要点。每个单元共有两页，左页是讲解和举例，右页是相应的练习。书中50个单元分为五个部分：第一部分（Section A）讲解英语中42个音素的发音及拼写（没有/ə/音的单独讲解，但这个音素穿插进了其他音素的讲解中。）；第二部分（Section B）讲解单词中的音节和重音；第三部分（Section C）讲解短语、句子和语法，涉及连读、节奏、强读和弱读、缩略式等语音知识；第四部分（Section D）主要讲解实际对话中的语调；第五部分（Section E）是一些实用的语音学习参考资料，内容包括：音标表、各种语言使用者的发音指南、音素对比、英文字母表、数字的读法、地名的发音、同音词等。书末附有各个单元练习的参考答案。

随书附赠一张CD-ROM光盘。光盘不仅包含书中所涉及的全部录音材料，而且有大量针对各个语音点的习题及其录音材料、测试题、语音游戏等等。

本书特色：

1. 内容编排注重科学性和趣味性的结合。本书通过大量的发音口型图、易混发音的对比、实例等科学地讲解各个语音点。书中配有百余幅插图和漫画，并运用各种符号形象地展示发音要领，提高学习的趣味性。

2. 语料新颖、真实、实用。本书中的语料均来源于当今学习、生活、工作中的真实场景，可模仿性和实用性强。

3. 练习题量丰富且形式多样。每一单元的右页提供大量练习，帮助学习者随时检测自己的学习成果并感受自己的进步，从而逐步培养英语听说的信心。每一单元的题型都有所不同，帮助学习者适时调整学习节奏，提高学习效率。

4. 以英音为主，兼顾其他口音。本书只选用英国南部口音（BBC英语）作为口语模仿的标准。但在实际交流中，你会听到各种各样的口音。如果不习惯这些口音，你将很难听懂来自世界各地、带有不同口音的人说的英语。

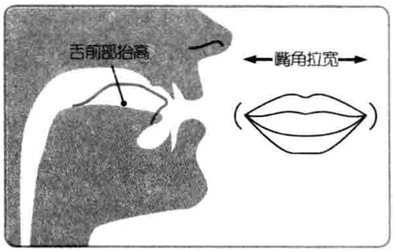
5. 以口语为主，兼顾听力。语音对听和说都很重要。与其他语音教程不同，本书的目的不仅是帮助学习者说一口标准的英语，而且要帮助学习者听懂快速英语并了解各种英语口音。书中很多单元（尤其是第三部分和第四部分中的单元）提供的一些语音要点对于提高听力比对

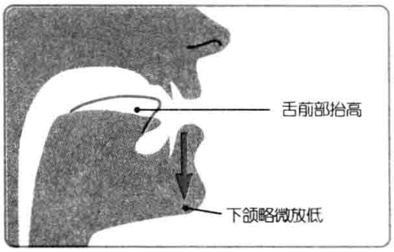
于提高口语来说更为重要。例如，很多英语母语者在语速很快时会通过某些方式连读。听的时候，你需要听懂这些连读；但说的时候不必效仿，人们同样能听懂你在说什么。这类语音要点显示在灰色的背景框中，并这样标出：听力要点。你可以自己选择只专注于听懂或者尝试同时模仿这样的发音。

使用本书所需设备：

你需要准备一台电脑安装CD-ROM软件或一个MP3播放器，用于播放本书的录音材料。如果有录音设备，你就能录下自己的声音，这样你可以听到自己的进步，会大有裨益。符号 A1 表示本段录音材料的音频序号，即文件夹A，音频1。

学习单个音素的发音时，准备一面镜子将大有帮助。你可以照镜子，将自己的口型与书中的口型图作比较。例如，右图是本书第2单元中的口型图。





学习顺序及实用的的参考资料：

最好按顺序学习本书的前四个部分：音素与拼写→音节与重音→连读、节奏、强读与弱读→语调。

也可以打乱各部分中单元的顺序。例如，你可以先看第1单元，然后看第28、33、44、2单元等。

如果你想更有针对性，可以先在“E2：各种语言使用者的发音指南”中找到你自己的母语。书中针对你的母语给出了相应的建议：“E3：音素对比”中哪些音素对比需要着重练习。

在学习第一部分时，如果你在辨别单个音素方面有困难，可以根据提示学习“E3：音素对比”这一部分。

是否需要认识音标？

即使不认识音标，也可以使用本书。但学习音标有助于你分析单词的发音。而且许多英语词典都使用音标标注发音。在“E1：音标表”对所有音标进行了分类，还配有大量的例词跟读练习，辅助你系统地学习英语音标。

如何使用录音材料？

听录音时，你可以根据个人需要多次重放录音。做练习时，你可能需要在每段录音后暂停，给自己留出时间思考或作答。书中要求跟读单词时，录音中会留出跟读所需的时间；但如果是跟读整个句子，你需要在每句话后暂停录音再跟读。

录音文件的位置：

文件夹A：1~12单元

文件夹B：13~27单元

文件夹C：28~43单元

文件夹D：44~50单元，E1，E4~E8

文件夹E：E3

To the teacher

English Pronunciation in Use Elementary has been written so that it can be used for self-study, but it will work equally well in the classroom. The advantages of working on pronunciation in the classroom include the following points.

- Learners can get guidance and immediate feedback from the teacher.
- Learners can practise the dialogues and other exercises in pairs.
- You can direct learners with particular pronunciation difficulties to do specific units on their own or in small groups, if appropriate.

In order to make the material accessible to learners, terminology has been kept as simple as possible. The remainder of this Introduction describes how the course is organised, and it is followed by a *Map of the contents* using standard terminology.

English Pronunciation in Use Elementary progresses from individual sounds, through sequences of sounds, and stress in words, to intonation patterns in phrases and sentences. Of course, as soon as learners begin to speak English, they need to begin to develop control of all these features in parallel, but the step-by-step, incremental approach adopted here is designed to facilitate a clear progression and a clear focus on one thing at a time. Nevertheless, learners do not necessarily have to work their way through all the units in each section in sequence; they can alternate units from different sections.

Section A Sounds and spelling

Unit 1 deals with some general issues of pronunciation and spelling. Units 2 to 23 introduce the phonemes (sounds) of English, first the vowels and then the consonants. Generally, two sounds are introduced in each unit, though some units have one or three. They are paired on the basis of similarity of spelling, similarity of articulation and potential for confusion. Guidance is given as to the most frequent spellings of each phoneme, and practice is given in some significant contrasts between phonemes.

One phoneme not specifically focused on in Section A is the weak vowel /ə/, the *schwa*; the emphasis is on pronouncing vowel sounds (and consonants, too) in stressed syllables, where accuracy and clarity are most important, and the *schwa* is treated as a feature of unstressed syllables rather than a sound with the same status as the other vowel phonemes.

Units 24 to 27 deal with consonant clusters.

Section B Syllables and words

Section B introduces the concept of syllables, the distinction between strong and weak syllables, and stress patterns in words.

Section C Phrases, sentences and grammar

Section C moves the focus from individual words to phrases and sentences, and highlights links between pronunciation and various aspects of grammar which are learned at elementary level.

Section D Conversation

Finally, Section D deals with aspects of intonation in the context of sentences and longer stretches of language such as dialogues, stories and conversation. It also covers some characteristic intonation patterns of common lexical phrases.

Intonation is very variable, and the intonation patterns attached to phrases and grammatical structures in these units are certainly not the only ones possible. However, they are very commonly – characteristically, even – used in these contexts, and the associations between intonation and contexts should help to make the intonation patterns memorable.

Section E Reference

Section E contains various kinds of further reference and practice material. The *Guide for speakers of specific languages* and *Sound pairs* can be used to prioritise certain pronunciation points and to reject others, depending on learners' particular needs.

What model of pronunciation?

As a model for learners to copy when they speak, I have used a standard southern British accent. This can be regarded as a provisional target, but learners will vary as to how closely they will want or need to achieve it. Some features of pronunciation are important for listening, but less essential for learners to imitate, and these are labelled as such. Nevertheless, attempting to reproduce these features should help learners in their ability to understand speech which contains them, and they may want to make the effort of incorporating them in their own English. In the listening exercises, a wider variety of accents can be heard, including some non-native speakers; it is important that learners at this level begin to get exposure to a variety of accents.

Recordings

A: Units 1–12
B: Units 13–27
C: Units 28–43
D: Units 44–50, Sections E1, E4–E8
E: Section E3 Sound pairs

目　录

Map of contents　内容一览　9

Section A Sounds and spelling 音素与拼写

1 *How many letters, how many sounds?* 拼写与发音 10
2 *Pizza for dinner* /iː/ 和 /ɪ/ 12
3 *A spoonful of sugar* /uː/ 和 /ʊ/ 14
4 *Father and mother* /ɑː/ 和 /ʌ/ 16
5 *A dog in the corner* /ɒ/ 和 /ɔː/ 18
6 *Bread and jam* /e/ 和 /æ/ 20
7 *My birthday's on Thursday.* /ɜː/ 22
8 *Here and there* /ɪə/ 和 /eə/ 24
9 *Have a great time!* /eɪ/, /aɪ/ 和 /ɔɪ/ 26
10 *Old town* /əʊ/ 和 /aʊ/ 28
11 *Pack your bags* /p/ 和 /b/ 30
12 *Twenty days* /t/ 和 /d/ 32
13 *Cats and dogs* /k/ 和 /g/ 34
14 *November the first* /f/ 和 /v/ 36
15 *Both together* /θ/ 和 /ð/ 38
16 *It's the wrong size, isn't it?* /s/ 和 /z/ 40
17 *Fresh fish, usually* /ʃ/ 和 /ʒ/ 42
18 *Chips and juice* /tʃ/ 和 /dʒ/ 44
19 *My hungry uncle* /m/, /n/ 和 /ŋ/ 46
20 *How many hours?* /h/ 48
21 *That's life!* /l/ 50
22 *What terrible weather!* /r/ 52
23 *What's the news?* /w/ 和 /j/ 54
24 *Sunglasses or umbrella?* 单词中的辅音连缀 56
25 *Train in the rain* 词首的辅音连缀 58
26 *Pink and orange* 词尾的辅音连缀 60
27 *Last week* 单词间的辅音连缀 62

Section B Syllables and words 音节与单词

28 *One house, two houses* 音节 64
29 *Wait a minute – where's the waiter?* 强元音和弱元音 66
30 *Single or return?* 双音节单词的重音 68
31 *Begin at the beginning* 多音节单词的重音 70
32 *Where's my checklist?* 复合词的重音 72

Section C Phrases, sentences and grammar 短语、句子和语法

33 *Phrases and pauses* 大声朗读 74
34 *Speak it, write it, read it* 连读 1 76
35 *Me and you, you and me* 连读 2 78
36 *Take me to the show, Jo* 节奏 80
37 *Hey, wait for me!* 强读式和弱读式 1：代词 82
38 *And what's his name?* 强读式和弱读式 2：形容词性物主代词、连词、介词 84
39 *There's a spider.* 强读式和弱读式 3：冠词、比较级、“there” 86
40 *Who was that?* 强读式和弱读式 4：助动词 88

41 *They're here!* 缩略式 90
42 *It's George's birthday.* 词尾-s的发音 92
43 *I looked everywhere.* 动词过去式后缀-ed的发音 94

Section D Conversation 对话

44 *Not half past <u>two</u>, half past <u>three</u>* 旧信息和新信息的语调 96
45 *And suddenly ...* 讲故事的语调 98
46 *Really? That's amazing!* 做一名好的倾听者 100
47 *I know <u>when</u> it is, but not <u>where</u>.* 对话中重要的词语 1 102
48 *Finished? I've just started!* 对话中重要的词语 2 104
49 *No, thanks, I'm just looking.* 短语和句子的语调 1 106
50 *Fine, thanks.* 短语和句子的语调 2 108

Section E Reference 参考资料

E1 Chart of phonemic symbols 音标表 110
E2 Guide for speakers of specific languages 各种语言使用者发音指南 111
E3 Sound pairs 音素对比 113
E4 From spelling to sound 从拼写到音素 127
E5 The alphabet 英文字母表 130
E6 Pronouncing numbers 数字的读法 132
E7 Pronouncing geographical names 地名的发音 135
E8 Homophones 同音词 137

Key 答案 138

Acknowledgements 166

Map of contents 内容一览

Section A Sounds and spelling 音素与拼写
1 拼写与发音
2 元音 /iː/ /ɪ/
3 元音 /uː/ /ʊ/
4 元音 /ɑː/ /ʌ/
5 元音 /ɒ/ /ɔː/
6 元音 /e/ /æ/
7 元音 /ɜː/
8 元音 /ɪə/ /eə/
9 元音 /eɪ/ /aɪ/ /ɔɪ/
10 元音 /əʊ/ /aʊ/
11 辅音 /p/ /b/
12 辅音 /t/ /d/
13 辅音 /k/ /g/
14 辅音 /f/ /v/
15 辅音 /θ/ /ð/
16 辅音 /s/ /z/
17 辅音 /ʃ/ /ʒ/
18 辅音 /tʃ/ /dʒ/
19 辅音 /m/ /n/ /ŋ/
20 辅音 /h/
21 辅音 /l/
22 辅音 /r/
23 辅音 /w/ /j/
24 单词中的辅音连缀
25 词首的辅音连缀
26 词尾的辅音连缀
27 单词间的辅音连缀

Section B Syllables and words 音节与单词
28 音节
29 强元音和弱元音
30 双音节单词的重音
31 多音节单词的重音
32 复合词的重音

Section C Phrases, sentences and grammar 短语、句子和语法
33 划分语块和大声朗读
34 “辅音-元音”连读
35 连读中加入/j/或/w/音
36 节奏
37 短语和句子中的强读式和弱读式：代词
38 短语和句子中的强读式和弱读式：形容词性物主代词，连词，介词
39 短语和句子中的强读式和弱读式：冠词，比较级，“there”
40 短语和句子中的强读式和弱读式：助动词
41 缩略式
42 名词复数和一般现在时中词尾-s的发音
43 规则动词过去式后缀-ed的发音

Section D Conversation 对话
44 语调：旧信息先降后升的语调和新信息的降调
45 语调：讲故事
46 语调：积极聆听
47 语调：对比重读
48 语调：强调重读
49 语调：功能性语言中的典型语调模式1
50 语调：功能性语言中的典型语调模式2

1 How many letters, how many sounds?
拼写与发音

A 所有带有 🎧 标志的部分表示有录音。一边阅读本页内容，一边听这些内容。

A2a 英语中有26个字母。
A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z

A2b 有5个元音字母。 A E I O U

A2c 有21个辅音字母。 B C D F G H J K L M N P Q R S T V W X Y Z

A2d 但英语中有40多个元音和辅音**音素**。
有一些单词中字母与音素的个数相同。

best 4个字母，4个音素

b	e	s	t
1	2	3	4

dentist 7个字母，7个音素

d	e	n	t	i	s	t
1	2	3	4	5	6	7

B 但有时单词中音素与字母的个数不同。

A3a 在单词green中，ee是一个音素；在单词happy中，pp是一个音素。

green 5个字母，4个音素

g	r	e	e	n
1	2	3		4

h	a	p	p	y
1	2	3		4

A3b 在单词bread中，ea是一个音素。

bread 5个字母，4个音素

b	r	e	a	d
1	2	3		4

A3c 有些单词中有不发音的字母。在单词listen中，t不发音。

listen 6个字母，5个音素

l	i	s	t	e	n
1	2	3	-	4	5

A3d 有些单词中，一个字母发两个音素。字母x在单词six中发两个音素，类似“k+s”。

six 3个字母，4个音素

s	i	x	
1	2	3	4

C 有时候相同的音素在不同的单词中字母拼写不同。例如，red中的e与bread中的ea发音一样。

A4a 有时两个单词的发音相同，但拼写不同。［见 Section E8 Homophones (同音词)］

know – no
A: Do you **know**? B: **No**, I don't.



A4b 有时两个单词拼写相同但发音不同。
read (动词原形) – read (过去式)
A: Do you want to **read** the newspaper?
B: No, thanks, I **read** it this morning.

A4c 因为音素的数目多于字母，我们用音标表示发音。

/best/ best /ˈdentɪst/ dentist /griːn/ green /ˈhæpi/ happy /ˈkɒfi/ coffee /ˈlɪsən/ listen
/θriː/ three /sɪks/ six /sɒks/ socks /bred/ bread /nəʊ/ no /nəʊ/ know /red/ red
/red/ read (过去式) /riːd/ read (动词原形)

符号ˈ(请看单词dentist, happy, coffee, listen音标中的的第一个符号)用在重读音节前，表示重音。
［见Section B: Syllables and words (音节与单词)］

练习

1.1 写出以下单词中的字母和音素个数。

	字母	音素
green	5	4
1 all		
2 back		
3 could		
4 knee		
5 sixty		
6 thing		
7 who		
8 address		

A5 核对书后的答案（见138页），听录音并跟读。

1.2 有些单词的音标很简单。拼写出下列音标所对应的单词。

EXAMPLE /best/ ....best........

1 /bɪg/ .... 3 /frend/ .... 5 /help/ .... 7 /'veri/ ....

2 /dres/ .... 4 /gɪv/ .... 6 /nekst/ .... 8 /wel/ ....

A6 核对书后的答案，听录音并跟读。

1.3 下列每组五个单词中都有一个相同的元音字母——a, e, i, o或u——其中一个单词中该元音字母发音不同。圈出中这个单词。

EXAMPLE

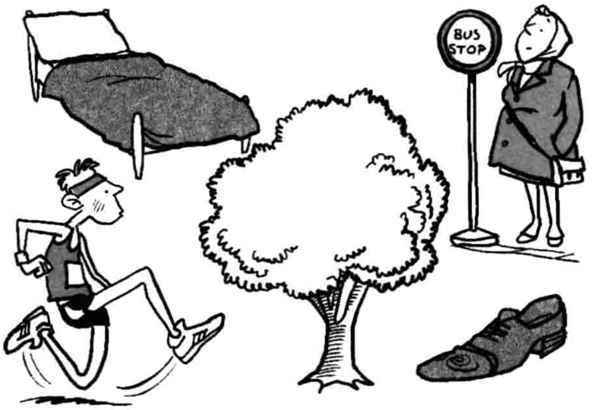
on	top	stop	(one)	gone
1 give	time	sit	think	rich
2 apple	bad	wash	catch	bank
3 much	bus	sun	push	up
4 many	maths	man	hat	flat

A7 核对书后的答案，听录音并跟读。

1.4 写出押韵的单词（单词的结尾发音相同）。

EXAMPLE

red	be d
1 key	tr_ _
2 blue	sh_ _
3 not	w_ _ _
4 one	r_ _
5 date	w_ _ _
6 lie	w_ _
7 so	sh_ _
8 beer	n_ _ _

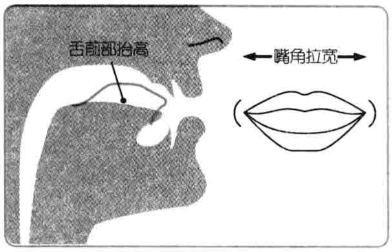


A8 核对书后的答案，听录音并跟读。

2 Pizza for dinner
/iː/ 和 /ɪ/

A 如何发/iː/音

A9a • /iː/为长音。看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。嘴角拉宽，像微笑一样，舌尖接触牙齿两侧。目标音：/iː/



B 音素与拼写

A9b • 字母组合ee或ea通常发/iː/音。听录音，读这些单词。

s**ee** agr**ee** **ea**t s**ea**t t**ea**m

A9c • 听录音，读其他含/iː/音的单词。

ie f**ie**ld p**ie**ce

e th**e**se m**e**tre s**e**cret **e**vening **e**qual P**e**ter mus**e**um Europ**e**an Chin**e**se Japan**e**se compl**e**te

ey k**ey**

i sk**i** k**i**lo l**i**tre p**i**zza pol**i**ce mach**i**ne magaz**i**ne

eo p**eo**ple

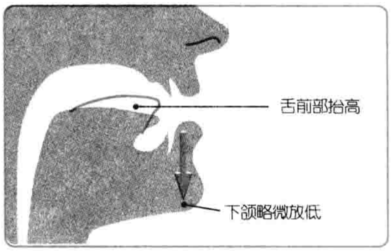
A9d • 听录音，读这些句子。听完一句话暂停录音，留出足够的时间跟读。

1 Can you s**ee** the s**ea**?
2 A p**ie**ce of p**i**zza, pl**ea**se.
3 P**e**ter's in the t**ea**m.
4 A k**i**lo of p**ea**ches and a l**i**tre of cr**ea**m.
5 Pl**ea**se can you t**ea**ch me to sp**ea**k Portugu**e**se?



C 如何发/ɪ/音

A10a • /ɪ/为短音。看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。/ɪ/音的口型的拉伸程度比/iː/稍小，舌位更靠后。目标音：/ɪ/



D 音素与拼写

A10b • 字母i通常发/ɪ/音。听录音，读这些单词。

if l**i**sten m**i**ss d**i**nner sw**i**m

A10c • 听录音，读其他含/ɪ/音的单词。

b**u**sy b**u**siness b**ui**lding s**y**stem

A10d • 听录音，读这些短语。

1 f**i**fty-s**i**x
2 d**i**nner **i**n the k**i**tchen
3 a c**i**nema t**i**cket
4 a p**i**cture of a b**ui**lding
5 b**i**g b**u**siness



A10e **注意：**英语字母表中有八个字母含/iː/音。听录音并跟读。

B C D E G P T V

A10f **注意：**2~10单元主要讲重读音节［见Section B: Syllables and words（音节与单词）］中的元音。非重读音节中的元音通常发弱元音/ə/。本书对这个音不进行详细讲解。听录音并跟读。

agree equ**a**l kitch**e**n muse**u**m Pet**er** pict**ure** pizz**a**

A10g **注意：**有些单词词尾的非重读音节中含/i/音［见Section B: Syllables and words（音节与单词）］，例如，happy, coffee, busy。这个音与/iː/类似但发音较短。听录音并跟读。

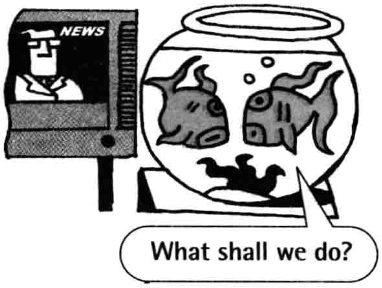
happ**y** coff**ee** bus**y** sixt**y**

练习

2.1 将下列发/iː/音的单词填入对话中。

email evening police secret Steve TV

1 A: What shall we do this ....?
B: Let's stay at home and watch ....
2 A: Let me read that ....
B: No – it's a ..secret.. !
3 A: You know my friend ....?
B: Yes.
A: Well, he's got a new job. He's joined the ....!

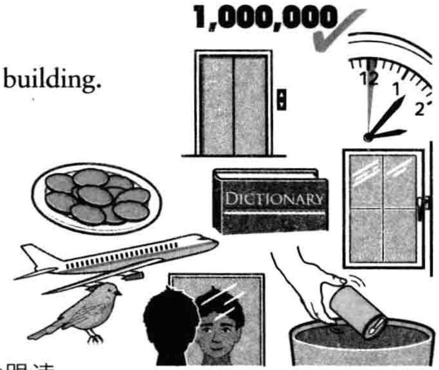


(A11) 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

2.2 根据提示写出发/ɪ/音的单词。

EXAMPLE A thousand thousand is a ..million.. .

1 You can use a .... to go up and down in a building.
2 There are sixty seconds in a ....
3 A .... is a book of words to help you with your English.
4 It's too warm in here – open the ....
5 Would you like a .... with your coffee?
6 Birds and planes have ....
7 You can see yourself in a ....
8 Don't drop .... – put it in a bin!



(A12) 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

2.3 圈出所有发/iː/音的字母或字母组合，在所有发/ɪ/音的字母或字母组合下面画线。

big busy dinner give green in listen meet office people pizza please repeat six tea three

(A13) 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

2.4 将合适的两部分连线，使其成为完整的句子。

EXAMPLE Let's have pizza ..for dinner.. .

1 We're always busy ....
2 Would you like tea ....
3 Give me that big ....
4 There were only three ....
5 Listen and ....
6 Let's meet at ....

a repeat.
b people in the museum.
c six o'clock.
d in the office.
e or coffee?
f green book, please.
g ~~for dinner~~.

(A14) 核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

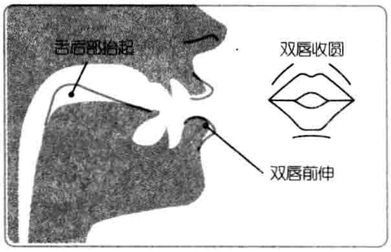
2.5 (A15) 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。核对书后的答案。如果感到困难，可到"Section E3: Sound pairs（音素对比）"进行更多的练习。

1 *leave / live* (⇒ 音素对比 1)
2 *knee / near* (⇒ 音素对比 2)
3 *litter / letter* (⇒ 音素对比 3)

3 A spoonful of sugar
/uː/ 和 /ʊ/

A 如何发/uː/音

A16a • /uː/为长音。看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。两唇形成圆筒状，舌头尽量向后缩。目标音：/uː/



B 音素与拼写

A16b • 字母u或字母组合oo, ou, oe, ue或ew通常发/uː/音。听录音，读这些单词。

t**oo** gr**ou**p sh**oe** bl**ue**

A16c • 当u或ew发/uː/音时，常常在/uː/前加/j/音。听录音，读这些单词。

m**u**sic n**ew**

A16d • 下面是其他发/uː/音的字母组合。听录音，读其他含/uː/音的单词。

t**wo** fr**ui**t j**ui**ce

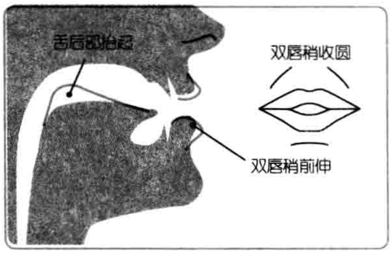
A16e • 听录音，读这些短语。

1 me t**oo**
2 work in gr**ou**ps
3 n**ew** sh**oe**s
4 red and bl**ue**
5 listen to the m**u**sic
6 forty-t**wo**
7 fr**ui**t j**ui**ce

⚠ 注意：/juː/是字母表中U的发音。

C 如何发/ʊ/音

A17a • /ʊ/为短音。看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。/ʊ/音的舌位比发/uː/音时略微靠前。目标音：/ʊ/



D 音素与拼写

A17b • 字母u或字母组合oo或ou通常发/ʊ/音。听录音，读这些单词。

f**u**ll s**u**gar b**oo**k f**oo**t w**ou**ld

A17c • 听录音，读下面其他发/ʊ/音的单词。

w**o**man

A17d • 听录音，读这些短语和句子。

1 My bag's f**u**ll.
2 Where's my b**oo**k?
3 my left f**oo**t
4 a kilo of s**u**gar
5 Who's that w**o**man?

练习

3.1 圈出发/uː/音的单词。（有9个。）

food four June look news room school soup spoon sugar town Tuesday two

(A18) 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

3.2 用**练习**3. 1中发/uː/音的合适的单词填入下列句子中。



1 Do you like fast ....food.... ?
2 Are you coming to ....?
3 It's .... the second of ....
4 Let's watch the ....
5 .... is over there.
6 Here's a .... for your ....

(A19) 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

3.3 圈出发/ʊ/音的单词。（有6个。）

book cookery cough could good looking lunch soon sugar thought through

(A20) 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

3.4 将**练习**3. 3中发/ʊ/音的合适的单词填入下列句子中。

1 Do you take ....?
2 .... you help me? I'm .... for a ....cookery.... ....

(A21) 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

3.5 圈出发/uː/或/ʊ/音的单词，并将其填入正确的一栏。

1 Is it really true?
2 You're standing on my foot!
3 Are you a good cook?
4 Where's my toothbrush?
5 Do you push or pull to open this door?
6 I'll be ready soon.
7 Here's your ticket – don't lose it!
8 Go through that door over there.
9 My keys! Where did I put them?

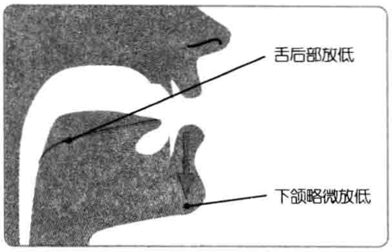
/uː/	/ʊ/
....true....	....foot....
....	....
....	....
....	....
....	....
	....

(A22) 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

3.6 (A23) 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。核对书后的答案。如果感到困难，可到"Section E3: Sound pairs（音素对比）"进行更多的练习。

1 *pool / pull* (⇒ 音素对比 4)
2 *look / luck* (⇒ 音素对比 5)
3 *soup / soap* (⇒ 音素对比 6)

4 Father and mother
/ɑː/ 和 /ʌ/



A 如何发/ɑː/音

A24a
- /ɑː/为长音。看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。口张大。目标音：/ɑː/

B 音素与拼写

A24b
- 字母a或字母组合ar通常发/ɑː/音。听录音，读这些单词。

after **a**fternoon **a**sk **a**nswer b**a**th b**a**throom c**a**n't cl**a**ss d**a**nce f**a**st f**a**ther gl**a**ss tom**a**to b**ar** c**ar** c**ar**d f**ar** p**ar**k st**ar** st**ar**t

A24c
- 听录音，读下面其他发/ɑː/音的单词。

aunt l**au**gh he**ar**t h**al**f （单词half中的l不发音。）

A24d
- 听录音，读这些句子。

1 How f**ar**'s the c**ar** p**ar**k?
2 We went to a l**ar**ge b**ar** full of film st**ar**s.
3 We're st**ar**ting in h**al**f an hour.

A24e

听力要点

- 对于大多数美国人和一些英国人来说，单词中的/ɑː/音后的字母r要发音。听同样的句子，这一次，字母r发音。

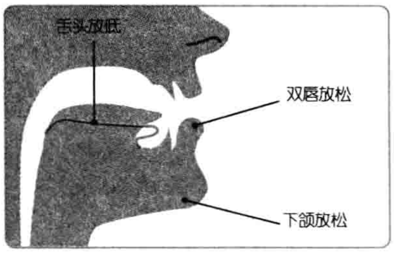
A24f
- 对于有些人而言，尤其在英国北部的说话者，将下列单词中的a或au发为/æ/音。听录音。

after afternoon ask answer aunt bath bathroom class dance fast glass laugh

A24g 听这些句子，第一遍发/ɑː/音，第二遍发/æ/音。

1 See you tomorrow **a**fternoon.
2 I'll **a**sk my **au**nt.
3 We were l**au**ghing and d**a**ncing in the cl**a**ssroom.
4 I left my gl**a**sses in the b**a**throom.

⚠ 注意：字母R的发音为/ɑː/或/ɑːr/。
注意：单词are通常发音为/ɑː/或/ɑːr/。（见第40单元。）



C 如何发/ʌ/音

A25a
- /ʌ/为短音。看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。口张大。目标音：/ʌ/

D 音素与拼写

A25b
- 字母u通常发/ʌ/音，有时ou或o也发这个音。听录音，读这些单词。

b**u**s c**o**lour c**o**me c**u**p fr**o**nt L**o**ndon l**u**ck M**o**nday m**o**nth m**o**ther m**u**ch n**o**thing n**u**mber r**u**n st**u**dy s**u**n **u**ncle **u**nder

⚠ 注意：单词son和sun发音相同。
注意：数词one的发音为/wʌn/。

A25c
- 听录音，读这些句子。

1 Good l**u**ck with your exam next m**o**nth!
2 Take the n**u**mber **o**ne b**u**s.
3 I said 'C**o**me on M**o**nday', not 'C**o**me on S**u**nday'.
4 My br**o**ther's st**u**dying in L**o**ndon.

A25d

听力要点

对于有些人而言，尤其在英国北部的说话者，将/ʌ/音发为/ʊ/音。听同样的句子，这一次，发音为/ʊ/。

练习

4.1 A26 听录音，将下列单词填入正确的一栏。

~~artist~~ garden March part ~~square~~ talk warm watch

含/ɑː/音的单词	含其他元音的单词
artist	square
....	....
....	....
....	....

核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

4.2 A27 听录音，将下列单词填入正确的一栏。

~~business~~ ~~country~~ fun home lots money mother push

含/ʌ/音的单词	有其他元音的单词
country	business
....	....
....	....
....	....

核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

4.3 用两个发音分别为/ɑː/和/ʌ/音的单词填空完成下列句子。

~~butter~~ carpet dark hard husband love Prague son



1 The ...butter's... too ....
2 I'd .... to buy that .... !
3 Their ....'s got .... hair.
4 I first met my .... in ....

A28 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

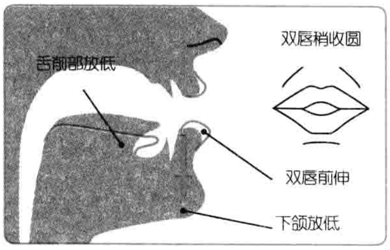
4.4 A29 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。核对书后的答案。如果感到困难，可到“Section E3: Sound pairs（音素对比）”进行更多的练习。

1 *heart / hat* (⇒ 音素对比 7)
2 *far / four* (⇒ 音素对比 8)
3 *cat /cut* (⇒ 音素对比 9)
4 *look / luck* (⇒ 音素对比 5)
5 *luck / lock* (⇒ 音素对比 10)
6 *butter / better* (⇒ 音素对比 18)

5 A dog in the corner

/ɒ/ 和 /ɔː/

A 如何发/ɒ/音



A30a • /ɒ/为短音。看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。双唇稍收圆，舌前部放低，舌向后缩。目标音：/ɒ/

B 音素与拼写

A30b • 字母o通常发/ɒ/音，有时字母a也发这个音。听录音，跟读这些单词。

bottle box chocolate clock coffee copy cost cross doctor dog gone
got holiday hospital hot job lock long lost lot not off often
possible shop song sorry stop top wrong
quality want wash wasn't watch what

⚠ 注意：单词cough的发音为/kɒf/。
注意：有时单词was含/ɒ/音。（见第40单元。）

A30c • 听录音，读这些句子。

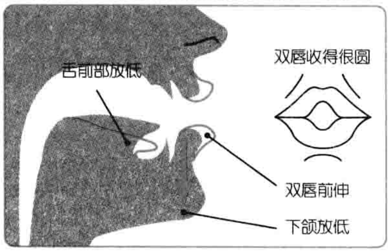
1 Have you got a lot of shopping?
2 John's gone to the shops.
3 How much did your holiday cost?
4 She said the coffee wasn't very good, but I thought it was.

A30d 听力要点

同样的句子，大多数美国人的发音有所不同。听录音。

1 Have you got a lot of shopping?
2 John's gone to the shops.
3 How much did your holiday cost?
4 She said the coffee wasn't very good, but I thought it was.

C 如何发/ɔː/音



A31a • /ɔː/为长音。看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。发这个音时双唇比发/ɒ/时更圆。目标音：/ɔː/

D 音素与拼写

A31b • 发/ɔː/音的字母或字母组合较多。听录音，读这些单词。

a	all ball call fall tall wall water
al	talk walk
au	autumn
aw	saw
augh	caught daughter taught
ough	bought thought
ar	quarter warm
or	born corner forty horse short sort
oor	door floor
ore	before more
our	four

A31c • 听录音，读这些短语。

1 quarter past four
2 born in autumn
3 have some more
4 walking on water
5 the fourth door on the fourth floor

A31d 听力要点

大多数美国人、苏格兰人、爱尔兰人和一些英格兰人会将单词中/ɔː/音后的字母r发音。听录音。

1 quarter past four
2 born in autumn
3 have some more
4 walking on water
5 the fourth door on the fourth floor

练习

5.1 写出下列单词。

EXAMPLE /bɒks/ ......box......

1 /klɒk/ .... 3 /wɒnt/ .... 5 /'sɒri/ ....
2 /gɒn/ .... 4 /'wɒntɪd/ .... 6 /wɒt/ ....

A32 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

5.2 A33 听录音，用这些带有/ɒ/音的单词完成下列对话。

box chocolates clock doctor gone got holiday on stopped ~~what~~ what

1 A: ......What...... time is it?
B: I don't know. The ....'s ....
2 A: .... have you ....?
B: A .... of ....
3 A: Where's the ....?
B: He's ....



What time is it?

核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

5.3 写出画线动词的过去式。

EXAMPLE

We <u>buy</u> everything at the supermarket. → We ......bought...... everything at the supermarket.

1 I <u>think</u> about you every day. → I .... about you every day.
2 We always <u>walk</u> home from school. → We always .... home from school.
3 I <u>catch</u> the first bus in the morning. → I .... the first bus in the morning.
4 My daughter <u>teaches</u> English. → My daughter .... English.

A34 核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

5.4 写出图中物品的名词。（所有单词的发音含/ɒ/或/ɔː/音。）

EXAMPLE ......1 bottle......

核对书后的答案。



5.5 A35 听录音，用含/ɒ/或/ɔː/音的单词填空。

This is our kitchen. On the table there's a big .... full of shopping, a .... of wine and some .... and pepper. There's a .... on the .... and the ....'s asleep in the corner behind the ....

核对书后的答案。然后听录音并跟录音一起读。

5.6 A36 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。核对书后的答案。如果感到困难，可到 "Section E3: Sound pairs（音素对比）" 进行更多的练习。

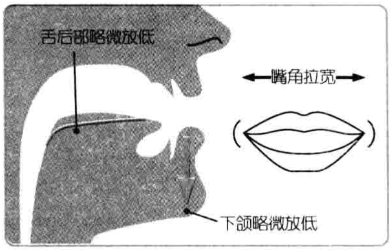
1 *not / note* (⇒ 音素对比 11)
2 *luck / lock* (⇒ 音素对比 10)
3 *coat / caught* (⇒ 音素对比 12)
4 *shot / short* (⇒ 音素对比 13)
5 *walk / work* (⇒ 音素对比 14)

6 Bread and jam

/e/ 和 /æ/

A 如何发/e/音

A37a
- /e/为短音。看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。嘴角拉得很宽。目标音：/e/



B 音素与拼写

A37b
- 字母e通常发/e/音，但有时ea, ie, a或ai也发这个音。听录音并跟读。

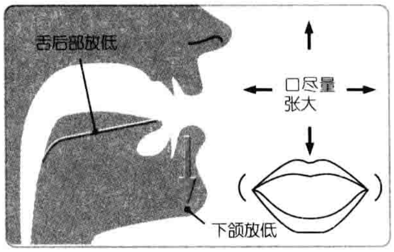
e ch**e**ck l**e**g l**e**tter r**e**d s**e**ntence
ea br**ea**d h**ea**d r**ea**d (过去式)
ie fr**ie**nd
a **a**ny m**a**ny
ai ag**ai**n s**ai**d

A37c
- 听录音，读这些句子。

1 T**e**ll me ag**ai**n.
2 S**e**nd me a ch**e**que.
3 Corr**e**ct these s**e**ntences.
4 Tw**e**nty to tw**e**lve.
5 H**e**lp your fr**ie**nd.

C 如何发/æ/音

A38a
- /æ/为短音。看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。口尽量张大（开口程度比/e/大）。目标音：/æ/



D 音素与拼写

A38b
- 字母a通常发/æ/音。听录音并跟读。

b**a**ck c**a**mera f**a**ctory h**a**t j**a**m m**a**nager m**a**p pl**a**n tr**a**ffic

A38c
- 听录音，读这些句子。

1 Th**a**nks for the c**a**sh.
2 I r**a**n to the b**a**nk.
3 Where's my bl**a**ck j**a**cket?
4 Th**a**t m**a**n works in a j**a**m f**a**ctory.
5 Let me c**a**rry your b**a**gs.

练习

6.1 写出下列单词。

EXAMPLE /mæp/ ......map......

1 /hænd/ ....
2 /best/ ....
3 /eg/ ....
4 /mæn/ ....
5 /men/ ....
6 /'meni/ ....
7 /hæv/ ....
8 /nekst/ ....

A39 核对书后的答案，听录音并跟读。

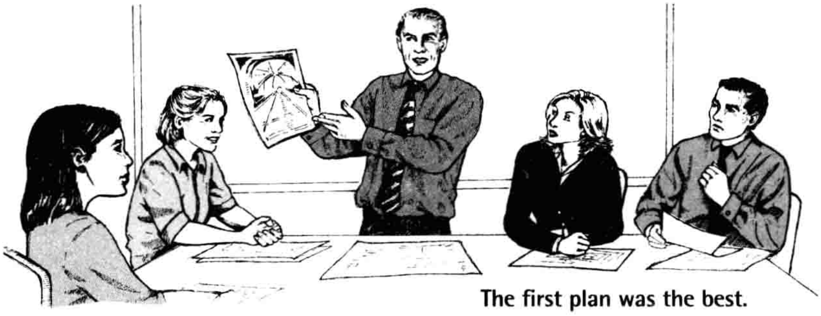
6.2 下面数字中有7个含/e/音，分别是那些？

3 7 ✓ 8 10 11 12 13 17 18 20 70 80 100

...seven... ....

A40 核对书后的答案，听录音并跟读。

6.3 将下列短语连成句子，确保每句话中都有一个含/æ/音和/e/音的单词。



The first plan was the best.

1 The first plan ...was the best... .
2 He said ....
3 How many ....
4 I haven't got ....
5 I'll be back ....
6 My friends live ....

a any milk.
b again tomorrow.
c in a flat over there.
d stamps do you need?
e ~~was the best.~~
f 'Thank you.'

A41 核对书后的答案，听录音并跟读。

6.4 A42 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。核对书后的答案。如果感到困难，可到"Section E3: Sound pairs（音素对比）"进行更多的练习。

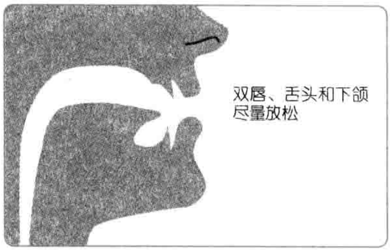
1 *men / man* (⇒ 音素对比 15)
2 *cat / cut* (⇒ 音素对比 9)
3 *had / hard* (⇒ 音素对比 7)
4 *pepper / paper* (⇒ 音素对比 16)
5 *head / heard* (⇒ 音素对比 17)
6 *set / sit* (⇒ 音素对比 3)
7 *better / butter* (⇒ 音素对比 18)

7 My birthday's on Thursday.

/ɜː/

A 如何发/ɜː/音

A43a • /ɜː/为长音。看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。发音时，双唇和舌头尽量放松。目标音：/ɜː/



⚠ 注意：讲话者不确定要说什么的时候，常常发/ɜː/音，写做"er"。听录音。

A43b

A: What date is it today?
B: Er, I think it's the tenth.

B 音素与拼写

A43c • 字母组合ir, or, ur, our, ear或er通常发/ɜː/音。听录音，读这些单词。

ir	b**ir**d	f**ir**st	b**ir**thday	c**ir**cle	th**ir**ty		
or	w**or**d	w**or**k	w**or**ld	w**or**se	w**or**st		
ur	t**ur**n	Th**ur**sday					
our	j**our**ney						
ear	**ear**ly	**ear**th	h**ear**d	l**ear**n			
er	s**er**vice	G**er**many	pref**er**	dess**er**t	w**er**en't	v**er**b	univ**er**sity

⚠ 注意：单词her, hers和were中通常含/ɜː/音。（见第38和第40单元。）

A43d • 听录音，读这些句子。



My birthday's on Thursday the thirty-first and hers is a week later.

1 My b**ir**thday's on Th**ur**sday the th**ir**ty-f**ir**st, and h**er**s is a week later.
2 When would you pref**er**, Tuesday or Th**ur**sday?
3 That was the w**or**st j**our**ney in the w**or**ld!
4 Have you ever h**ear**d this w**or**d?
5 A: The cakes w**er**en't very good.
B: I thought they w**er**e.
6 She went to univ**er**sity to l**ear**n G**er**man.

A43e

注意发/ɜː/音的字母组合中都有字母r。大多数美国人、苏格兰人、爱尔兰人和一些其他地区说英语的人在说话中字母r都发音（见第22单元）。听录音。

听力要点

1 My bi<u>r</u>thday's on Thu<u>r</u>sday the thi<u>r</u>ty-fi<u>r</u>st, and he<u>r</u>s is a week later.
2 When would you prefe<u>r</u>, Tuesday or Thu<u>r</u>sday?
3 That was the wo<u>r</u>st jou<u>r</u>ney in the wo<u>r</u>ld!
4 Have you eve<u>r</u> hea<u>r</u>d this wo<u>r</u>d?
5 A: The cakes we<u>r</u>en't very good.
B: I thought they we<u>r</u>e.
6 She went to unive<u>r</u>sity to lea<u>r</u>n Ge<u>r</u>man.

练习

7.1 A44 听录音，将下列单词填入正确的一栏。

beard ~~car~~ chair ~~church~~ curtains dirty ~~door~~ floor four girl horse large March near nurse pair parked purse shirt shorts stars surfer third warm wearing

含/ɜː/音的单词	含/ɔː/音的单词	含/ɑː/音的单词	含其他元音的单词
1 church	1 door	1 car	1 beard
2	2	2	2 ....
3	3	3	3 ....
4	4	4	4 ....
5	5	5	5 ....
6	6		
7			
8			
9			

核对书后的答案，再听一遍录音并跟读。

7.2 看右图，用**练习**7.1中的单词填空完成下列句子。

1 The ....nurse.... is sitting on a .... next to the ....
2 The boy's .... a .... of .... and a ....
3 There's a man with a .... standing .... the ....
4 The girl's .... is on the .... next to the bed.
5 It's .... in the room.
6 The date is the .... of ....
7 There's a picture of a ...., and a picture of ....
8 There are flowers on the ....
9 Through the windows, you can see a ...., with a .... outside. There are some .... in the sky.



A45 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

7.3 A46 听录音，写下你所听到的数字。

EXAMPLE ....42....

1 .... 3 .... 5 .... 7 ....
2 .... 4 .... 6 .... 8 ....

核对书后的答案，再听一遍录音并跟读。

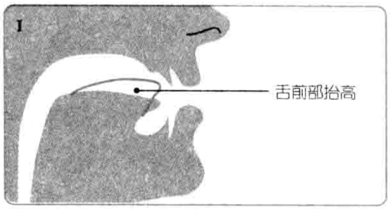
7.4 A47 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。核对书后的答案。如果感到困难，可到"Section E3: Sound pairs（音素对比）"进行更多的练习。

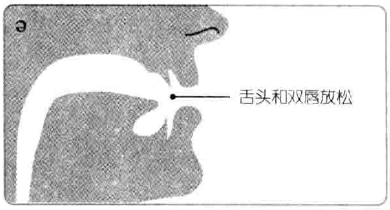
1 *shirts / shorts* (⇒ 音素对比 14)
2 *first / fast* (⇒ 音素对比 19)
3 *bird / beard* (⇒ 音素对比 20)
4 *heard / head* (⇒ 音素对比 17)

8 Here and there
/ɪə/ 和 /eə/

A 如何发/ɪə/音

A48a • /ɪə/为长音，由/ɪ/向/ə/滑动。看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。目标音：/ɪə/





注意：/ɪə/是单词ear的发音。

B 音素与拼写

A48b • 下面是发/ɪə/音的字母或字母组合。听录音并跟读。

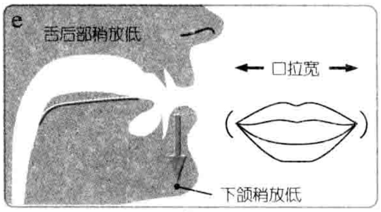
ea　real
ear　ear　beard　clear　hear　nearly　year
eer　beer　cheers
ere　here　we're

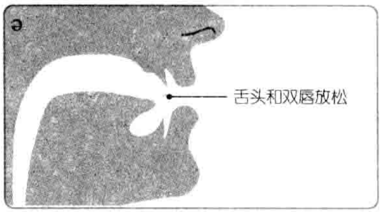
A48c • 听录音，读这些句子。

1 We're here!
2 Have a beer – cheers!
3 Is there a bank near here?
4 The meaning isn't really clear.

C 发/eə/音

A49a • /eə/为长音，由/e/向/ə/滑动。看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。目标音：/eə/





注意：/eə/是单词air的发音。

D 音素与拼写

A49b • 下面是发/eə/音的字母或字母组合。听录音并跟读。

are　care　square
air　air　chair　fair　hair　stair
ear　wear
ere　where
aer　aeroplane

A49c • 听录音，读这些句子。

A: Look at that aeroplane!
B: Where?
A: Up there, in the air, of course!

A49d

听力要点

有时在/ɪə/音或/eə/音之后会听到/r/音。听录音。

含/r/音　ear　nearly　air　where
不含/r/音　ear　nearly　air　where

练习

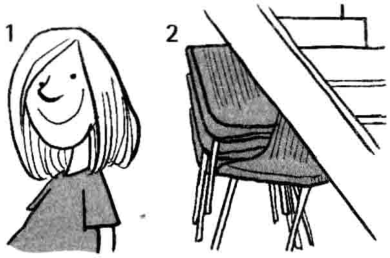
8.1 阅读下面的便条，找出4个发/ɪə/音的单词和4个发/eə/音的单词。

> Dear Mary,
> I'm really pleased you can come to the theatre with us tonight.
> We've got seats upstairs, near the front. See you there!
> Sarah

/ɪə/ 1 Dear 2 .... 3 .... 4 ....
/eə/ 1 Mary 2 .... 3 .... 4 ....

A50 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

8.2 分别用一个含/ɪə/音和一个含/eə/音的单词填空完成下列句子。



1 She's got ..fair.. h........ .
2 The ch........ are under the st........ .
3 How many y........ have you lived h........ ?
4 There's a man with a b........ sitting in the s........ .
5 Speak up! I can't h........ you.
6 It's a cl........ day – you can see for miles.

A51 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

8.3 A52 听录音。你能否在画线单词中的/ɪə/或/eə/音后听到/r/音？圈出正确的回答。

EXAMPLE

See you next <u>year</u>.	/r/	(无 /r/)
1 See you next <u>year</u>.	/r/	无 /r/
2 <u>We're</u> from England – what about you?	/r/	无 /r/
3 Bye – take <u>care</u>!	/r/	无 /r/
4 Bye – take <u>care</u>!	/r/	无 /r/
5 <u>Where</u> shall we meet?	/r/	无 /r/
6 <u>Where</u> shall we meet?	/r/	无 /r/

核对书后的答案。

8.4 A53a 听录音，跟读下面的诗歌。

I've had these ears
a hundred years.
Well, no, not really,
but very, very nearly!



A53b

When nobody's there,
I don't care what I wear,
and I sit on the stair,
with my feet on a chair.



8.5 A54 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。核对书后的答案。如果感到困难，可到“Section E3: Sound pairs（音素对比）”进行更多的练习。

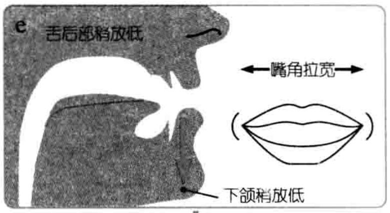
1 *near / knee* (⇒ 音素对比 2)
2 *bird / beard* (⇒ 音素对比 20)
3 *wear / way* (⇒ 音素对比 21)

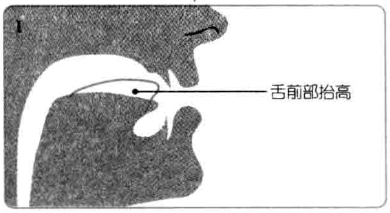
9 Have a great time!
/eɪ/, /aɪ/ 和 /ɔɪ/

A 如何发/eɪ/音

A55a • /eɪ/为长音，由/e/向/ɪ/滑动。看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。目标音：/eɪ/

⚠ 注意：/eɪ/是字母A的发音。





B 音素与拼写

A55b • 下面是发/eɪ/音的字母或字母组合。听录音并跟读。

a — a**g**e, c**a**me, pl**a**ne, t**a**ble
ai — r**ai**n, w**ai**t
ay — d**ay**, pl**ay**, s**ay**
ey — gr**ey**
ea — br**ea**k, gr**ea**t
eigh — **eigh**t, w**eigh**t

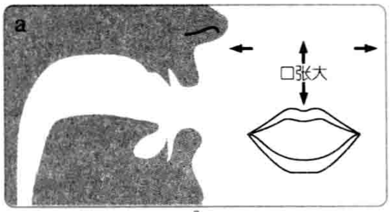
A55c • 听录音，读这些句子。

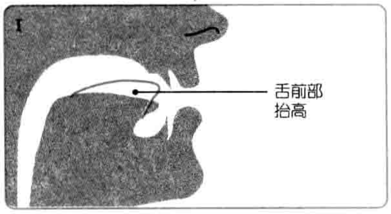
1 They came a day later.
2 It was a grey day in May.
3 Is this the way to the station?
4 Wait at the gate – I'll be there at eight.

C 如何发/aɪ/音

A56a • /aɪ/为长音，由/a/向/ɪ/滑动。看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。目标音：/aɪ/

⚠ 注意：/aɪ/正是单词eye或字母I的发音。





D 音素与拼写

A56b • 下面是发/aɪ/音的字母或字母组合。听录音并跟读。

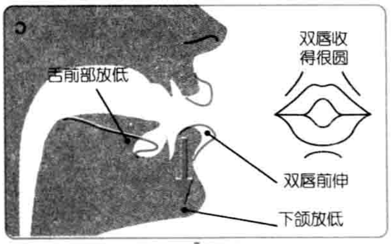
i — l**i**ke, t**i**me, wh**i**te
ie — d**ie**
y — dr**y**, Jul**y**, wh**y**
igh — h**igh**, n**igh**t, r**igh**t
uy — b**uy**

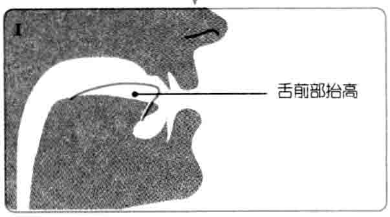
A56c • 听录音，读这些句子。

1 Do you like dry wine?
2 Why don't you try?
3 July will be fine.
4 Drive on the right.

E 如何发/ɔɪ/音

A57a • /ɔɪ/为长音，由/ɔ/向/ɪ/滑动。看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。目标音：/ɔɪ/





F 音素与拼写

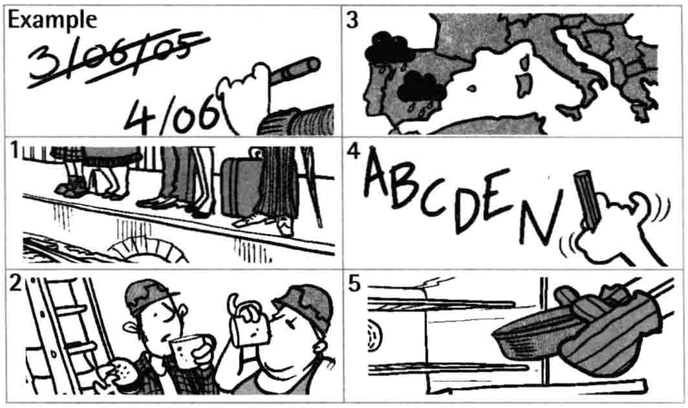
A57b • 字母组合oi或oy通常发/ɔɪ/音。听录音并跟读。

oi — c**oi**n, p**oi**nt, v**oi**ce
oy — b**oy**, enj**oy**, t**oy**

A57c • 听录音，读这些句子。

1 I can hear a boy's voice.
2 Those are coins, not toys!

练习



9.1 完成图片的标题，所有要填的单词都含/eɪ/音。

Example Ch*ang*ing the d*ate*

1 W..........ing for the tr..........
2 T..........ing a br..........
3 R..........ing in Sp..........
4 M..........ing a m..........
5 B..........ing a c..........

A58 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

9.2 根据下面已给出的动词的过去式写出其动词原形，它们都含/aɪ/音。

Example drove ....*drive*....

1 wrote .... 3 found .... 5 flew ....
2 tried .... 4 bought ....

A59 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

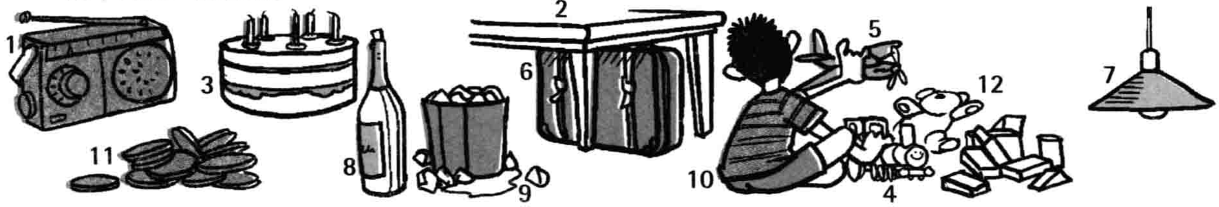
9.3 完成下列句子，所有要填的单词都含/eɪ/音或/aɪ/音。

bye day dry eight flight great miles ~~night~~ right time way white wine

1 The plane left in the evening and arrived the next morning. It was a ....*night*.... ....
2 It's best to drink .... with fish.
3 Fourteen kilometres is about ....
4 There was no rain yesterday. It was a ....
5 I think I'm lost – is this the .... to the beach?
6 We've had a ...., thanks. .... !

A60 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

9.4 看图片，找出6件用含/eɪ/音的单词表示的物品、3件用含/aɪ/音的单词表示的物品以及3件用含/ɔɪ/音的单词表示的物品。



/eɪ/ 1 ....*radio*.... 2 t.......... 3 c.......... 4 t.......... 5 p.......... 6 s..........
/aɪ/ 7 l.......... 8 w.......... 9 i..........
/ɔɪ/ 10 b.......... 11 c.......... 12 t..........

A61 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

9.5 A62 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。核对书后的答案。如果感到困难，可到“Section E3: Sound pairs（音素对比）”进行更多的练习。

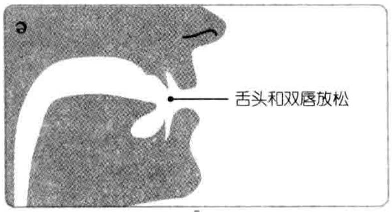
1 *gate / get* (⇒ 音素对比 16)
2 *way / wear* (⇒ 音素对比 21)
3 *my / May* (⇒ 音素对比 22)

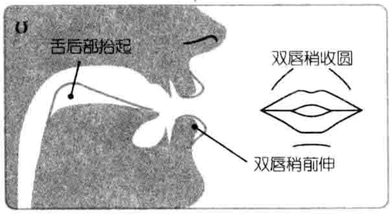
10 Old town
/əʊ/ 和 /aʊ/

A 如何发/əʊ/音

A63a
- /əʊ/为长音，由/ə/向/ʊ/滑动。看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。目标音：/əʊ/

⚠ 注意：/əʊ/是字母O的发音。





B 音素与拼写

A63b
- 下面是发/əʊ/音的字母或字母组合。听录音并跟读。

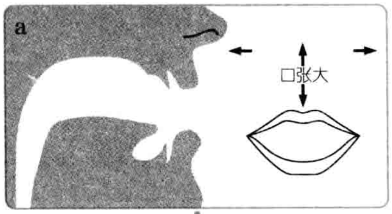
o	n**o**	c**o**ld	p**o**st	cl**o**se	dr**o**ve	h**o**me	ph**o**ne
ow	kn**ow**	l**ow**	sh**ow**	sl**ow**			
oa	b**oa**t						
oe	t**oe**						

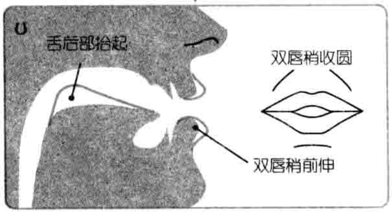
A63c
- 听录音，读这些句子。

1 I d**o**n't kn**ow**.
2 My t**oe**s are c**o**ld.
3 She ph**o**ned me in Oct**o**ber.
4 They sh**ow**ed us their h**o**me.

C 如何发/aʊ/音

A64a
- /aʊ/为长音，由/a/向/ʊ/滑动。看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。目标音：/aʊ/





D 音素与拼写

A64b
- 字母组合ow和ou通常发/aʊ/音。听录音并跟读。

ow	h**ow**	n**ow**	v**ow**el
ou	l**ou**d	m**ou**th	s**ou**nd

A64c
- 听录音，读这些短语和句子。

1 a th**ou**sand p**ou**nds
2 l**ou**d v**ow**el s**ou**nds
3 r**ou**nd the h**ou**se
4 C**ou**ntd**ow**n – three, two, one, n**ow**!

练习

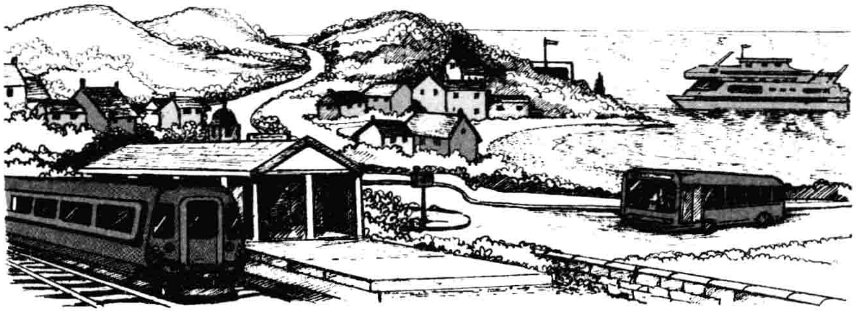
10.1 圈出每组中元音发音不同的单词。

EXAMPLE

houses	(soup)	about	mountains
1 stone	gone	closed	coast
2 brown	flower	snow	town
3 old	over	lost	no
4 coach	boat	some	road

A65 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

10.2 用**练习**10.1中的一些单词填空完成下列短文，所有要填的单词都含/əʊ/音或/aʊ/音。



It's an ....old........ ....town........ on the .... The .... are built with .... You can get there by train, ... or .... In winter there's a lot of .... and sometimes the .... the .... is ....

A66 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

10.3 听录音，跟读下面的诗歌。

A67a **A pound**
I found a pound
down on the ground
and said, 'It's mine, I've got it.'
I looked around
and heard no sound
and put it in my pocket.







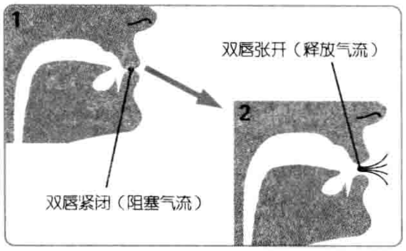
A67b **A letter**
A letter came
in the post
from the coast
– the one that I wanted the most.
It said, 'Don't be slow,
walk through the snow
and phone me when you are close.'

10.4 A68 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。核对书后的答案。如果感到困难，可到"Section E3: Sound pairs（音素对比）"进行更多的练习。

1 *coast / cost* (⇒ 音素对比 11)
2 *boat / boot* (⇒ 音素对比 6)
3 *woke / walk* (⇒ 音素对比 12)

11 Pack your bags
/p/ 和 /b/

A 如何发/p/音



A69a • 看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。

1 双唇紧闭，阻塞气流。
2 双唇张开，释放气流。这时，如果嘴唇前面有一张纸，它会颤动。目标音：/pə/

B 音素与拼写

A69b • 字母p或字母组合pp通常发/p/音。听录音，读这些单词。

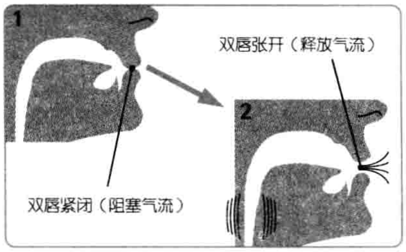
p **p**en **p**ush sto**p**
pp ha**pp**y sto**pp**ing

A69c 注意：p在一些单词中作首字母时不发音。听录音并跟读。psychology
注意：单词cupboard发音为/ˈkʌbəd/——p不发音。
⚠ 注意：字母组合ph通常发/f/音：**ph**one, **ph**oto, autogra**ph**。
注意：/piː/是字母P的发音，也可指pence（便士）：“It costs 75**p**.”

A69d • 听录音，读这些短语和句子。

1 a **p**iece of **p**a**p**er 2 **P**ush or **p**ull? 3 a dee**p** slee**p** 4 a chea**p** tri**p** round Euro**p**e

C 如何发/b/音



A70a • 看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。

1 双唇紧闭，阻塞气流。
2 双唇张开，释放气流。

/b/音的发音方法与/p/有两点不同：

1 如果嘴唇前面有一张纸，释放气流时它不颤动。
2 声带振动。目标音：/bə/

A70b • 听录音，发这两个音。 /pə/ /bə/

D 音素与拼写

A70c • 字母b或字母组合bb通常发/b/音。听录音，读这些单词。

big **b**est ro**b** ro**bb**er ver**b**

A70d 注意：b在一些单词词尾时不发音。听录音并跟读。climb comb thumb bomb
⚠ 注意：/biː/是字母B的发音。

A70e • 听录音，读这些短语和句子。

1 **b**ig **b**usiness
2 When was the **b**a**b**y **b**orn?
3 It's **b**etter to **b**ake your own **b**read than to **b**uy it.
4 What's that **b**ig **b**uilding **b**etween the **b**ank and the li**b**rary?

A70f • 听录音，读发音中含/p/和/b/音的句子。

1 **P**amela's got a new jo**b**.
2 **P**aul's got **b**ig **p**ro**b**lems with his neigh**b**ours.
3 Can you remem**b**er **P**ete's **p**hone num**b**er?
4 **P**ack your **b**ags and **b**ring your **p**ass**p**ort.

A70g 听力要点

有时词尾的/p/或/b/音发音较轻甚至听不到。听录音。

1 Sto**p**!	Sto(p)!	3 Hey, Bo**b**!	Hey, Bo(b)!
2 Don't dro**p** that!	Don't dro(p) that!	4 the worldwide we**b**	the worldwide we(b)

练习

11.1

从方框中选择正确的单词填在横线上。

back beard ~~bill~~ black bomb book boot boots bought bread
build but butter buy pack paper part party pay pepper pie
piece pool pull purse put

1 /bɪl/ ....bill....
2 /piːs/ ....
3 /baɪ/ ....
4 /pɜːs/ ....
5 /blæk/ ....
6 /peɪ/ ....
7 /bʌt/ ....
8 /pæk/ ....
9 /bɒm/ ....
10 /ˈpepə/ ....
11 /ˈbʌtə/ ....
12 /pɑːt/ ....
13 /bʊk/ ....
14 /ˈpɑːti/ ....
15 /bæk/ ....
16 /buːts/ ....
17 /puːl/ ....
18 /bɪəd/ ....
19 /pʊt/ ....
20 /bɔːt/ ....

A71 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

11.2

用字母p或b将下面的单词补充完整。

1 Can you help me _aint the _edroom wardro_e?
2 Brian's _lond, and he's got a _ig _eard.
3 We're going to the _ub. It's my _rother's _irthday.
4 Where did I _ut my _lack _oots?
5 We asked the waiter to _ring the _ill, and it was dou_le what we expected!

A72 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。



Can you help me paint the bedroom wardrobe?

11.3

A73 听录音并填空。

Example

Are you going to the ....shop.... ?

1 We'll have to change that ....
2 Looking for a .... ?
3 It isn't on the ....
4 Shall we give him a .... ?
5 Do we have to walk .... that hill?
6 .... the bus – I want to get off!
7 I .... you have a good time!
8 .... yourself!

核对书后的答案，再听一遍录音并跟读。

11.4

A74 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。核对书后的答案。如果感到困难，可到"Section E3: Sound pairs（音素对比）"进行更多的练习。

1 *pears / bears* (⇒ 音素对比 23)
2 *pear / fair* (⇒ 音素对比 24)
3 *copies / coffees* (⇒ 音素对比 24)

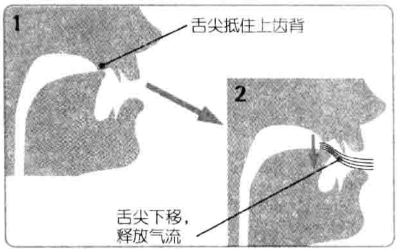
12 Twenty days
/t/ 和 /d/

A 如何发/t/音

A75a • 看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。

1 舌尖抵住上齿背，阻塞气流。

2 舌尖下移，释放气流。这时，如果嘴唇前面有一张纸，它会颤动。目标音：/tə/



B 音素与拼写

A75b • 字母t或字母组合tt通常发/t/音。听录音，读这些单词。

t tea till ten top two twenty water bit complete eat eight light suit

tt better bottle

A75c • 动词过去式后缀ed有时发/t/音。听录音，读这些单词。

ed stopped washed

A75d • 一些专有名词中的th发/t/音。听录音，读这些单词。

th Thailand Thames Thomas

A75e 注意：字母t在一些单词中不发音。听录音，读这些单词。 listen castle

⚠ 注意：/ti:/是字母T和单词tea的发音。

C 如何发/d/音

A76a • 看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。

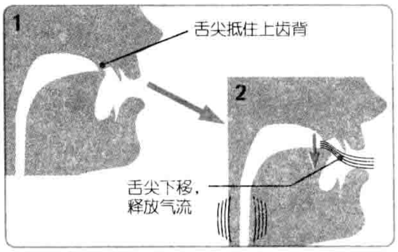
1 舌尖抵住上齿背，阻塞气流。

2 舌尖下移，释放气流。

/d/音的发音方法与/t/有两点不同：

1 如果嘴唇前面有一张纸，它不颤动。

2 声带振动。目标音：/də/



A76b • 听录音，发这两个音。/tə/ /də/

D 音素与拼写

A76c • 字母d或字母组合dd通常发/d/音。听录音，读这些单词。

d day deep do door did food good head ready

dd add address ladder middle

⚠ 注意：/di:/是字母D的发音。

听力要点

A76d • 有时词尾的/t/或/d/发音较轻甚至听不到。听差别。

1 something to eat something to ea(t)

2 turn on the light turn on the ligh(t)

3 the end of the road the end of the roa(d)

4 writing on the board writing on the boar(d)

A76e /d/音之前的元音比/t/前的元音发音时间长。听录音。

roa(d) wro(te) boar(d) bough(t)

A76f • /t/或/d/位于其他辅音之间时，往往听不到。因此，facts听起来像fax，next week听起来像necks week。听录音。

A: Tell me all the fac(t)s. B: I'll tell you nex(t) week.

练习

12.1 A77 听录音，完成下列句子。

EXAMPLE What shall we do ....next.... week?

1 2001 was the .... time I went to Britain.
2 I .... some money in the street.
3 I worked hard .... week.
4 Do you know a .... place to eat near here?
5 I live in .... Road.
6 Is this the .... house?
7 Do you want some .... ?
8 Do you like my new .... ?

核对书后的答案，再听一遍录音并跟读。

12.2 A78 听录音，写下你所听到单词的数字顺序。

send	sent	wide ....1....	white ....
said	set	road	wrote ....

核对书后的答案，再听一遍录音并跟读。

12.3 A79 听录音，完成下列句子。

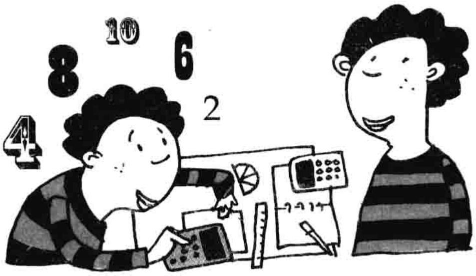
1 They .... us emails every day.
2 I .... all my money on CDs.
3 When it stopped snowing we went for a walk across the .... fields.
4 People .... houses next to the beach.

核对书后的答案，再听一遍录音并跟读。

12.4 听录音，跟读下面的诗歌。

A80a **Too many twos**

Tom and Tim were twins.
Tom said to Tim, 'Can I talk to you?'
Tim said to Tom, 'Ssh, wait a minute'...
One two is two
Two twos are four
Three twos are six
Four twos are eight
Five twos are ten ...'
Tom said to Tim, 'And what are two fives?'
Tim said to Tom, 'Two fives? Don't ask me!'



A80b **A difficult daughter**

Doctor Dixon said to his daughter Daria,
'Don't go down town after dark – it's dangerous.'
Daria said, 'Don't worry, Dad, I won't. You know I never do.'
Next day when he came home for dinner, he said,
'Daria, dear, you didn't go down town after dark, did you?'
and she said, 'No, Dad, I didn't.'
But she did.
I don't know the details, but she definitely did.



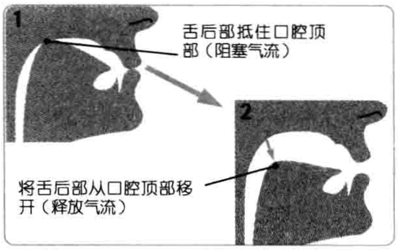
12.5 A81 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。核对书后的答案。如果感到困难，可到"Section E3: Sound pairs（音素对比）"进行更多的练习。

1 *what / watch* (⇒ 音素对比 25)
2 *wide / white* (⇒ 音素对比 26)
3 *dry / try* (⇒ 音素对比 26)
4 *riding / writing* (⇒ 音素对比 26)
5 *taught / thought* (⇒ 音素对比 27)

13 Cats and dogs

/k/ 和 /g/

A 如何发/k/音



B2a • 看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。

1 舌后部抵住口腔顶部，阻塞气流。

2 舌头移开，释放气流。这时，如果嘴唇前面有一张纸，它会颤动。目标音：/kə/

B 音素与拼写

B2b • 字母c, k或字母组合ck通常发/k/音，有时ch也发这个音。听录音，读这些单词。

c	**c**ar	**c**at	**c**areful	**c**lean	**c**lose	**c**olour	fa**c**t	
k	**k**eep	**k**ey	**k**ind	**k**itchen	des**k**	li**k**e	tal**k**	wal**k**
ck	ba**ck**	bla**ck**	che**ck**	po**ck**et	ti**ck**			
ch	s**ch**ool	stoma**ch**	**ch**emist	ar**ch**itect				

B2c • 字母组合qu通常发/kw/音。听录音，读这些单词。 **qu**ick **qu**iet **qu**arter

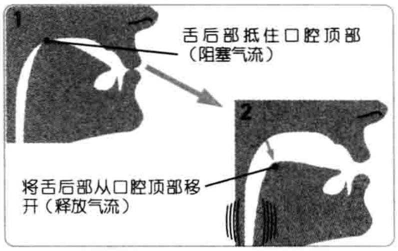
B2d • 字母x通常发/ks/音。听录音，读这些单词。 fa**x** si**x** ta**x**i

⚠ 注意：字母k在一些单词中不发音，例如：know, knee, knife。

B2e • 听录音，读这些句子。

1 Loo**k** in the **k**itchen **c**upboard. 2 **K**eep your **k**eys in your po**ck**et.

C 如何发/g/音



B3a • 看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。

1 舌后部抵住口腔顶部，阻塞气流。

2 舌头移开，释放气流。

• /g/音的发音方法与/k/有两点不同：

1 如果嘴唇前面有一张纸，它不颤动。

2 声带振动。目标音：/gə/

B3b • 听录音，发这两个音。 /kə/ /gə/

D 音素与拼写

B3c • 字母g或字母组合gg通常发/g/音。听录音，读这些单词。

garden **g**irl **g**lass **g**o **g**old a**g**o hun**g**ry ba**g** le**g** e**gg** bi**gg**er

B3d • 字母x有时发/gz/音。听录音，读这些单词。 e**x**am e**x**actly

⚠ 注意：字母g在一些单词中不发音，例如，foreigner, sign, high, bought。

注意：sing, sings, singing, singer这些单词中通常没有/g/音（见第19单元）。

B3e 注意：一些单词中的字母g后有一个不发音的u。听录音，读这些单词。 **gu**ess **gu**est dialo**gue**

B3f • 听录音，读这些句子。

1 Can you **g**uess the be**g**inning of the dialo**g**ue? 2 Are you **g**oing jo**gg**ing a**g**ain?

B3g 听力要点

词中或词尾的/k/音或/g/音常常发音很轻甚至听不到。听录音。

1 I li(k)ed the film – the a(c)ting was perfe(c)t.

2 Do you li(ke) fo(lk) musi(c)?

3 It was a dar(k) night.

4 What's your do(g) called?

练习

13.1 从方框中选择正确的单词填在横线上。

ache again ago back bag big bigger bike black called cake carry classical coffee cold comb come copy gave get give great grey guess guest keys kiss walk work

1 /gɪv/ give	8 /eɪk/	15 /bæg/ ....
2 /bɪg/	9 /gest/	16 /'bɪgə/ ....
3 /get/	10 /bæk/	17 /kəʊld/ ....
4 /kəʊm/	11 /'kɒfi/	18 /'kæri/ ....
5 /kiːz/	12 /ə'gen/	19 /wɜːk/ ....
6 /keɪk/	13 /wɔːk/	20 /greɪ/ ....
7 /kɪs/	14 /kɔːld/	

B4 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

13.2 用发/k/或/g/音的字母将下列单词补充完整。

1 Can I c arry your ba_s?
2 Give me a bi_ _iss.
3 You _ave me _old _offee a_ain.
4 A _rey _at with _reen eyes wal_ed into the _arden.
5 The _uests would li_e e_ _s for brea_fast.

B5 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。



Can I carry your bags?

13.3 B6 听录音并填空。

Example
It's time to go back.
1 Shall we .... ?
2 I came by ....
3 When you go out, ... the ....
4 I'm going to buy a new .... tomorrow.
5 A: You don't .... in your tea, do you?
B: I do, in ....
6 It's only seven o'clock and it's already ....
7 Listen and ....
8 Mark your answer with a ....

听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

13.4 B7 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。核对书后的答案。如果感到困难，可到 "Section E3: Sound pairs（音素对比）" 进行更多的练习。

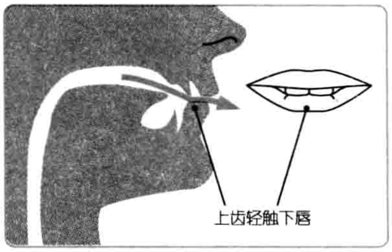
1 *back / bag* (⇒ 音素对比 28)
2 *cold / gold* (⇒ 音素对比 28)

14 November the first

/f/ 和 /v/

A 如何发/f/音

B8a • 看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。声带不振动。将手放在嘴前面，能感觉到气流。目标音：/fffff/



B 音素与拼写

B8b • 字母f或字母组合ff通常发/f/音，有时ph或gh也发这个音。听录音，读这些单词。

f **f**eel **f**irst ca**f**é a**f**ter lea**f**
ff o**ff** co**ff**ee
ph **ph**one autogra**ph**
gh lau**gh**

B8c • 听录音，读这些短语和句子。

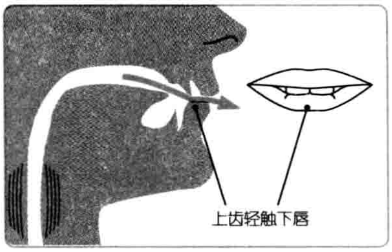
1 **f**orty-**f**ive
2 a **f**amily **ph**oto
3 I'm **f**eeling **f**ine.
4 the **f**ourteenth of **F**ebruary
5 When I asked **f**or her autogra**ph** she just lau**gh**ed.

C 如何发/v/音

B9a • 看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。声带振动。将手放在嘴前面，气流比发/f/音时弱。目标音：/vvvvv/

B9b • 听录音，发这两个音。

/fffff/ /vvvvv/



D 音素与拼写

B9c • 字母v通常发/v/音。听录音，读这些单词。

very tra**v**el e**v**ery ha**v**e lea**v**e

⚠ 注意：人名Stephen中的ph发音为/v/。

B9d • 听录音，读这些短语和句子。

1 We're lea**v**ing at fi**v**e past se**v**en.
2 a **v**isa for a se**v**en-day **v**isit
3 Ste**ph**en li**v**es in a **v**illage.

练习

14.1 写出下列单词。

EXAMPLE
/fəʊn/ ......phone......

1 /faɪv/ .... 3 /fɜːst/ .... 5 /liːv/ ....
2 /ˈvɪzɪt/ .... 4 /friː/ .... 6 /ˈfəʊtəʊ/ ....

B10 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

14.2 用下列单词完成图片的标题。

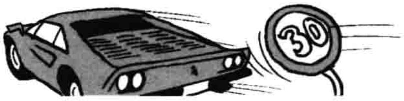
few voices fast seventh fine forks vegetables lift five floor view driving knives



1 A ......fine...... ....



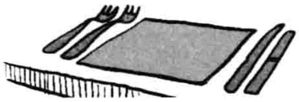
4 ....



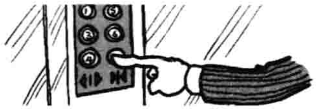
2 .... too ....



5 A ....



3 .... and ....



6 The .... to the ....

B11 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

14.3 听录音，跟读下面的诗歌。

B12a **November the first**

November the first
Five leaves left
One leaf falls
Four leaves left.



B12b **The traveller**

'A visitor? Having fun?
A fine day for travelling,'
he said.
'A café? A phone? Here?
I'm afraid not,'
he laughed.
'You'll find one in the village.
Far? No, not very far.
The ferry over the river.
Then a few more miles –
five, or seven, or eleven ...'

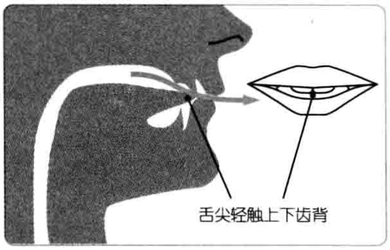


14.4 B13 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。核对书后的答案。如果感到困难，可到"Section E3: Sound pairs（音素对比）"进行更多的练习。

1 *few / view* (⇒ 音素对比 29)
2 *leaf / leave* (⇒ 音素对比 29)
3 *copy / coffee* (⇒ 音素对比 24)

15 Both together
/θ/ 和 /ð/

A 如何发/θ/音



B14a • 看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。舌尖轻触齿背，使气流从缝隙中流出。声带不振动。目标音：/θθθθθ/

B 音素与拼写

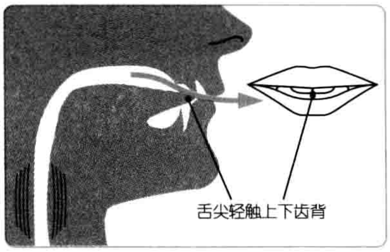
B14b • 字母组合th发/θ/音。听录音，读这些单词。

thin **th**anks **th**irty **th**eatre **th**umb **Th**ursday **th**irsty **th**ree
bo**th** mon**th** mou**th** nor**th** sou**th**
bir**th**day

B14c • 听录音，读这些句子。

1 I **th**ought April the twelf**th** was a Tuesday, but it's a **Th**ursday.
2 **A:** I've got **th**ree bir**th**days this mon**th**.
B: **Th**ree bir**th**days? What do you mean?
A: My wife's, my son's and my daughter's!
3 It's **th**irteen degrees in the nor**th**, and **th**irty in the sou**th**.
4 **A:** One **th**ird is **th**irty-**th**ree per cent, isn't it?
B: **Th**irty-**th**ree and a **th**ird per cent, to be exact.

C 如何发/ð/音



B15a • 看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。舌尖轻触齿背，使气流从缝隙中流出。/ð/与/θ/音的不同之处在于前者声带要振动。目标音：/ððððð/

B15b • 听录音，发这两个音。

/θθθθθ/ /ððððð/

D 音素与拼写

B15c • 字母组合th发/ð/音。听录音，读这些单词。

this **th**at **th**ese **th**ose **th**en **th**ey fa**th**er mo**th**er bro**th**er o**th**er toge**th**er
wea**th**er wi**th**out brea**th**e wi**th**

B15d • 听录音，读这些句子。

1 **A:** Can I have one of **th**ose, please?
B: **Th**ese?
A: No, **th**e o**th**ers, over **th**ere.
2 **A:** Two coffees, please.
B: Wi**th** milk?
A: One wi**th**, and one wi**th**out.

⚠ 注意：字母组合th的发音通常为/θ/或/ð/，但有时为/t/音，例如：Thailand，Thames，Thomas

练习

15.1 写出下列单词。

EXAMPLE
/ðæt/ ......that......

1 /mʌnθ/ ....
2 /ðen/ ....
3 /θɪn/ ....
4 /ðeɪ/ ....
5 /wɪð/ ....
6 /ˈbɜːθdeɪ/ ....

B16 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

15.2 B17 听录音，哪些单词含/θ/音，哪些单词含/ð/音？

1 What are you thinking about?
2 Can I have another?
3 Are you good at maths?
4 Where's the bathroom?
5 What are those things over there?
6 Is the plural of 'tooth' 'teeth'?
7 Is today the fourth or the fifth?

含/θ/音的单词	含/ð/音的单词
......thinking......	....
....	....
....	....
....	....
....	
....	
....	
....	

核对书后的答案，再听一遍听录音并跟读。

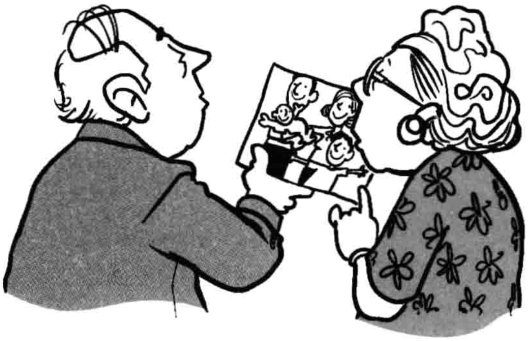
15.3 B18 听录音，完成下列句子。

1 The ......weather...... will be fine for .... next .... days. ...., on ...., ...'ll be some rain in the .... The .... will be dry and sunny, but only about .... degrees.

2 A: I'm thinking of going to the .... tonight.
B: Me too! Let's .... go ....!

3 A: Are you .... ?
B: No, ...

4 A: .... are my .... and ...., about .... years ago. And .... is my older .... – he was about .... years old.
B: And .... baby – is .... you?
A: Yes, ...'s me, ... my .... in my ....!



4

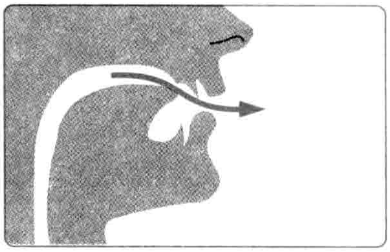
核对书后的答案，再听一遍录音并跟读。

15.4 B19 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。核对书后的答案。如果感到困难，可到"Section E3: Sound pairs（音素对比）"进行更多的练习。

1 *thing / sing* (⇒ 音素对比 30)
2 *three / tree* (⇒ 音素对比 27)

16 It's the wrong size, isn't it?
/s/ 和 /z/

A 如何发/s/音



B20a • 看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。舌头轻触两侧牙齿，声带不振动。目标音：/sssss/

B 音素与拼写

B20b • 字母s, c或字母组合ss通常发/s/音，有时sc也发这个音。听录音，读这些单词。

s	sit	sister	bus			
ss	class	glasses				
c	city	circle	pencil	place	police	pronounce
sc	science	scissors				

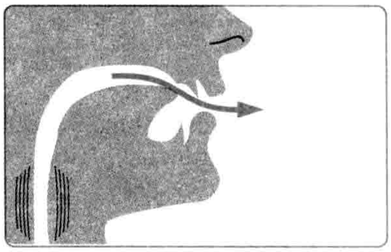
B20c • 字母x的发音通常为/ks/。听录音，读这些单词。

six next

B20d • 听录音，读这些短语和句子。

1 summer in the city
2 Have you seen my glasses?
3 So, I'll see you in the same place next Saturday.
4 I saw your sister on the bus yesterday.
5 My science lessons were the most interesting.

C 如何发/z/音



B21a • 看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。舌头轻触两侧牙齿，/z/与/s/音的不同之处在于前者声带要振动。目标音：/zzzzz/

B21b • 听录音，发这两个音。

/sssss/ /zzzzz/

D 音素与拼写

B21c • 字母s或 z通常发/z/音，有时ss或zz也发这个音。听录音，读这些单词。

s	gives	sisters	easy	husband	roses
z	zoo	zero	size		
ss	scissors				
zz	jazz				

B21d • 听录音，读这些句子。

1 What time does the zoo close?
2 A: My favourite music is jazz.
B: Really? Well, it's always interesting, but it isn't always easy to listen to.
3 Roses are my favourite flowers.

练习

16.1

写出下列单词。

EXAMPLE /saɪz/ ......size......

1 /seɪ/ .... 3 /liːvz/ .... 5 /taɪmz/ ....
2 /sæt/ .... 4 /iːst/ .... 6 /'glɑːsɪz/ ....

B22 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

16.2

1 表示一周哪两天的单词含/s/音？ ....
2 表示一周哪三天的单词含/z/音？ ....
3 表示一年哪三个月份的单词含/s/音？ ......August...... ....

B23 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

16.3

B24 听录音，写出下列单词中所含的/s/音和/z/音。

EXAMPLES sit /s/ easy /z/ places /s/ /z/

1 these	/ /	5 isn't	/ /	9 certainly	/ /
2 size	/ / / /	6 pronounce	/ /	10 words	/ /
3 style	/ /	7 dress	/ /	11 suits	/ / / /
4 please	/ /	8 it's	/ /		

听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

16.4

用**练习**16. 3中合适的单词填空。

1 A: Do you like this ......dress...... ? B: The .... you, but .... the wrong ...., ... it?
2 A: Can you .... for me, ... ?
B: Yes, ...

B25 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

16.5

B26 听录音，跟读下面的诗歌。

One day

Mondays to Fridays –
Gets up.
Walks to the station.
Waits for the train.
Gets off at the fourth stop.
Walks to the office.
Sits in the office.
Has lunch.
Sits in the office
Walks to the station.
Comes home.
Thinks: 'One day …'

Saturdays and Sundays –
Gets up. Late.
Does the washing.
Goes shopping.
Comes home.
Watches TV.
Goes out.
Eats out.
Comes home.
Watches TV.
Thinks: 'One day …'

One day –
Gets up. Early.
Goes to the station.
Waits for the train.
Doesn't get off at the fourth stop.
Doesn't get off at the fifth stop.
Stays on the train.
Where does it go?
Watches through the windows.

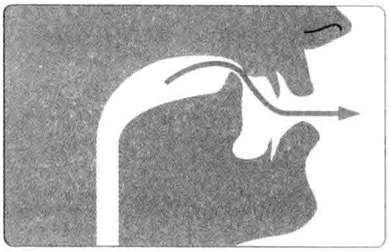
16.6

B27 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。核对书后的答案。如果感到困难，可到 "Section E3: Sound pairs（音素对比）" 进行更多的练习。

1 *place / plays* (⇒ 音素对比 31)
2 *zoo / Sue* (⇒ 音素对比 31)
3 *so / show* (⇒ 音素对比 32)
4 *sing / thing* (⇒ 音素对比 30)

17 Fresh fish, usually
/ʃ/ 和 /ʒ/

A 如何发/ʃ/音



B28a • 看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。舌尖指向口腔顶部，舌头轻触两侧牙齿，声带不振动。目标音：/ʃʃʃʃʃ/

B 音素与拼写

B28b • 字母组合sh通常发/ʃ/音。听录音，读这些单词。

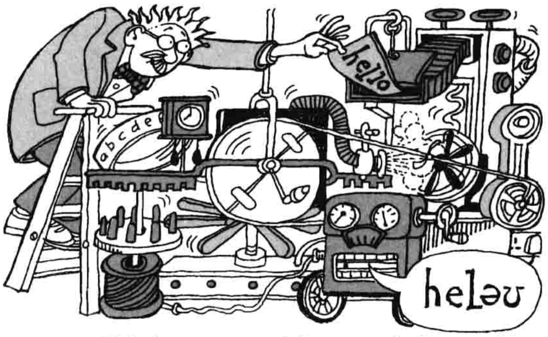
shop fa**sh**ion ca**sh** fre**sh** wa**sh** mu**sh**room

B28c • 但/ʃ/音还有以下字母或字母组合。听录音，读这些单词。

c o**c**ean
ch ma**ch**ine
ci deli**ci**ous spe**ci**al
s **s**ugar **s**ure
ss Ru**ss**ia
ti interna**ti**onal

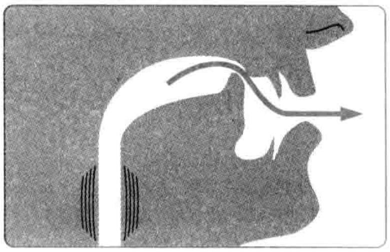
B28d • 听录音，读这些句子。

1 This is a very spe**ci**al pronuncia**ti**on ma**ch**ine.
2 All our food is fre**sh**, and we serve deli**ci**ous interna**ti**onal spe**ci**alities.
3 A: You didn't put **s**ugar in my tea, did you?
B: No.
A: Are you **s**ure?



This is a very special pronunciation machine.

C 如何发/ʒ/音



B29a • 看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。舌尖指向口腔顶部，舌头轻触两侧牙齿。/ʒ/与/ʃ/音的不同之处在于前者声带要振动。目标音：/ʒʒʒʒʒ/

B29b • 听录音，发这两个音。

/ʃʃʃʃʃ/ /ʒʒʒʒʒ/

D 音素与拼写

B29c • 发/ʒ/音的单词不多，字母组合si或字母s通常发这个音。听录音，读这些单词。

televi**si**on A**si**a u**s**ually

B29d • 听录音，读这些句子。

A: Do you like sport?
B: Yes ... but only on televi**si**on, u**s**ually!

练习

17.1 写出下列单词。

Example

/ˈʃʊgə/ ....sugar........

1 /fɪʃ/ ....

2 /ˈsteɪʃn/ ....

3 /ˈfɪnɪʃ/ ....

4 /ʃaʊt/ ....

5 /ʃɔːt/ ....

6 /dɪʃ/ ....

B30 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

17.2 B31 听录音，完成下面的短文。

Recipe

Take your ....cash........ .
Go to the ....
Buy some ....
and some ....
Take them home.
.... them.
Cook them for a .... time.
Put them in a ....
Eat them.
.... , '............................ !'

核对书后的答案，再听一遍录音并跟读。

17.3 B32 听录音，完成下列句子。

1 Yes, we're an .... business. We're based in .... , but we fly to anywhere in .... and the Pacific ....

2 A: Why are you .... at that .... ?
B: It's eaten my .... !

核对书后的答案，再听一遍录音并跟读。



17.4 B33 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。核对书后的答案。如果感到困难，可到 "Section E3: Sound pairs（音素对比）" 进行更多的练习。

1 *shoe* / *Sue* (⇒ 音素对比 32)

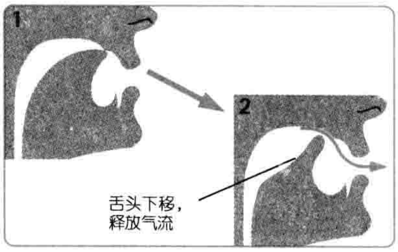
2 *shoes* / *choose* (⇒ 音素对比 33)

18 Chips and juice

/tʃ/ 和 /dʒ/

A 如何发/tʃ/音

B34a • 看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。声带不振动。/tʃ/音是/t/音和/ʃ/音的结合。目标音：/tʃə/



B 音素与拼写

B34b • 字母t或字母组合ch或tch通常发/tʃ/音。听录音，读这些单词。

ch	**ch**ips	**ch**oose	Mar**ch**	whi**ch**
t	fu**t**ure	ques**t**ion		
tch	ca**tch**	wa**tch**	ki**tch**en	

⚠ 注意：字母H的发音为/eɪtʃ/。听录音并跟读。

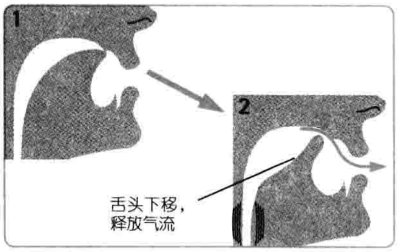
B34c B34d 注意：在单词Czech中，cz的发音为/tʃ/，ch的发音为/k/。单词check, cheque和Czech发音相同，均为/tʃek/。听录音并跟读。［见Section E8: Homophones（同音词）］

B34e • 听录音，读这些句子。

1 Whi**ch** ques**t**ions did you **ch**oose in the exam?
2 The pic**t**ure in the ki**tch**en is by a **Cz**ech artist.

C 如何发/dʒ/音

B35a • 看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。声带不振动。/dʒ/音是/d/音和/ʒ/音的结合。目标音：/dʒə/



B35b • 听录音，发这两个音。

/tʃə/ /dʒə/

D 音素与拼写

B35c • 字母j, g或字母组合ge, dge通常发/dʒ/音。听录音，读这些单词。

j	**j**am	**j**acket	**j**eans	**j**ob	**j**et
g	**g**eneral				
ge	a**ge**	lar**ge**			
dge	fri**dge**				

⚠ 注意：字母G的发音为/dʒiː/，字母J的发音为/dʒeɪ/。听录音并跟读。

B35d

B35e • 听录音，读这些句子。

1 Who's that wearing a lar**ge** oran**ge** **j**acket?
2 There's some **j**uice in the fri**dge**.
3 Langua**g**es are a bri**dge** between people.

练习

18.1 写出下列单词。

EXAMPLE /dʒæm/ ......jam......

1 /wɒtʃ/ ....
2 /dʒɒb/ ....
3 /tʃɪps/ ....
4 /lɑːdʒ/ ....
5 /dʒuːs/ ....
6 /dʒæz/ ....
7 /tʃeə/ ....
8 /eɪdʒ/ ....

B36 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

18.2 B37 听录音，圈出画线部分发音不同的单词。

EXAMPLE

larger	generally	(guess)	fridge
1 village	get	Germany	page
2 coach	check	Christmas	temperature
3 June	vegetable	give	cabbage
4 station	Russian	picture	information

核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

18.3 B38 听录音，读这些句子。

1 I went to a small Russian village.
2 Cabbage is my favourite vegetable.
3 I was in Germany at Christmas.
4 Look at this page of information.
5 I'm going to the coach station.
6 Can you check the temperature, please?

18.4 B39 听录音，将下列单词填入正确的一组。

~~teacher~~ lounge bridge chair large chicken cheap juice Dutch language chips orange cheese dangerous

含/tʃ/音的单词

......teacher...... ....
....
....
....

含/dʒ/音的单词

....
....
....
....

听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

18.5 用**练习18. 4**中合适的单词填空。

1 Something to drink: ......orange...... ....
2 Something to eat, from a European country: ....
3 A ....
4 Someone who teaches English or Chinese: a ....
5 A hot meal: .... and ....
6 A ....
7 A big room to sit and relax in: a ....



3



6

B40 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

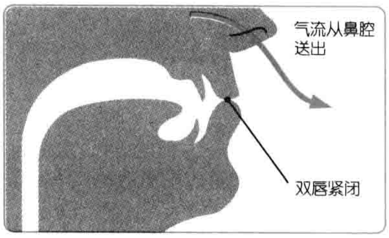
18.6 B41 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。核对书后的答案。如果感到困难，可到"Section E3: Sound pairs（音素对比）"进行更多的练习。

1 *watch / wash* (⇒ 音素对比 33)
2 *shoes / choose* (⇒ 音素对比 33)
3 *what's / watch* (⇒ 音素对比 25)
4 *coach / coats* (⇒ 音素对比 25)

19 My hungry uncle
/m/, /n/ 和 /ŋ/

A 如何发/m/音

B42a • 发/m/音时，气流从鼻腔而非口腔送出。看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。发音时双唇紧闭，声带振动。目标音：/mmmmm/



B 音素与拼写

B42b • 字母m或字母组合mm通常发/m/音，有时mb或mn也发这个音。听录音，读这些单词。

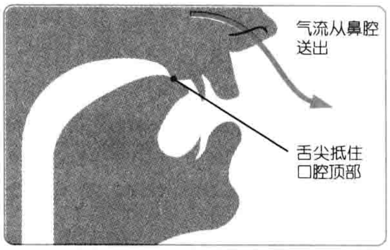
m **m**e **m**ore le**m**on swi**m** fil**m** so**m**e so**m**eti**m**es
mm su**mm**er **mb** co**mb** **mn** autu**mn**

B42c • 听录音，读这些短语。

1 so**m**eti**m**es in su**mm**er **2** **m**ore for you, **m**ost for **m**e **3** in the **m**iddle of the fil**m**

C 如何发/n/音

B43a • 发/n/音时，气流从鼻腔而非口腔送出。看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。发音时舌尖抵住上齿后面的口腔顶部，声带振动。目标音：/nnnnn/



D 音素与拼写

B43b • 字母n通常发/n/，有时字母组合nn或kn也发这个音。听录音，读这些单词。

n **n**ew **n**ow su**n** o**n**e go**n**e
nn di**nn**er su**nn**y
kn **kn**ew **kn**ow **kn**ife

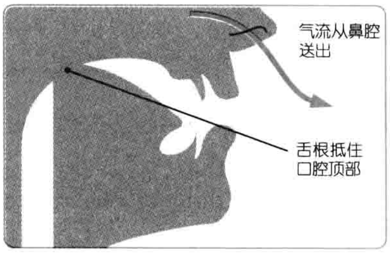
B43c • 听录音，读这些短语。

1 a su**nn**y after**n**oo**n** **2** su**n** and moo**n** **3** **n**i**n**e mo**n**ths

E 如何发/ŋ/音

B44a • 发/ŋ/音时，气流从鼻腔而非口腔送出。看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。发音时舌根抵住口腔顶部，声带振动。目标音：/ŋŋŋŋŋ/

B44b • 听录音，发这三个音。 /mmmmm/ /nnnnn/ /ŋŋŋŋŋ/



F 音素与拼写

• 字母组合ng通常发/ŋ/音。后面如果有/k/音或/g/音，字母n也发/ŋ/音。字母组合ng有时发/ŋ/音（例如：singer），有时发/ŋg/（例如：finger）。字母组合nk的发音总是/ŋk/。

B44c • 听录音，读这些单词。

/ŋ/ eveni**ng** lo**ng** si**ng** si**ng**er thi**ng**
/ŋk/ ba**nk** tha**nk**s thi**nk** u**nc**le
/ŋg/ a**ng**ry fi**ng**er hu**ng**ry lo**ng**er si**ng**le

B44d • 听录音，读这些短语。

1 thi**nk**i**ng** about thi**ng**s **2** a lo**ng** eveni**ng** si**ng**i**ng** so**ng**s **3** a hu**ng**ry man is an a**ng**ry man

练习

19.1 写出下列单词。

EXAMPLE
/mɔː/ ....more....

1 /muːn/ ....
2 /rɒŋ/ ....
3 /drɪŋk/ ....
4 /ˈʌŋkl/ ....
5 /naɪvz/ ....
6 /kəʊm/ ....
7 /θɪŋ/ ....
8 /ˈstrɒŋgə/ ....

B45 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

19.2 根据右图提示写出两个含/n/音的单词和三个含/ŋ/音的单词。



含/n/音的单词	含/ŋ/音的单词
....knee....	....
....	....
	....

B46 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

19.3 用下列单词完成图片的标题。

room nine wrong single ~~warm~~ uncle languages evening hungry answer



1 A ....warm.... ....
2 A ....
3 My ....
4 A ....
5 ....

B47 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

19.4 看图片，完成句子。



1 The woman's ....listening.... to the radio and ....
2 The phone's ....
3 The cat's ....
4 It's ....

B48 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

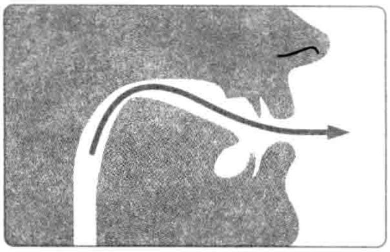
19.5 B49 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。核对书后的答案。如果感到困难，可到“Section E3: Sound pairs（音素对比）”进行更多的练习。

1 *ran / rang* (⇒ 音素对比 34)
2 *thing / think* (⇒ 音素对比 34)
3 *might / night* (⇒ 音素对比 35)
4 *some / sung* (⇒ 音素对比 35)
5 *some / sun* (⇒ 音素对比 35)

20 How many hours? /h/

A 如何发/h/音

B50a • 看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。气流从口腔后部的狭窄缝隙中通过，声带不振动。目标音：/hə/



B 音素与拼写

B50b • 字母h通常发/h/音，但在一些单词中字母组合wh也发这个音。听录音，读这些单词。

h **h**at **h**ere **h**elp **h**ot **h**ow be**h**ind
wh **wh**o **wh**ose **wh**ole

B50c • h在一些单词中作首字母时不发音。听录音，读这些单词。

hour honest

B50d • 听录音，读这些句子。



1 **H**i, **h**ello, **h**ow are you?
2 **Wh**ose **h**at is this?
3 It's **h**ot in **h**ere.
4 We **h**ad a **wh**ole month's **h**oliday.
5 Can you **h**elp me for **h**alf an hour?
6 **Wh**o's **wh**o?

B50e 有时单词**he, him, her, hers, his, had, have, has**开始的/h/发音很轻甚至听不到（见第37~40单元）。听录音。

听力要点

1 Is he there?
2 Have you seen him?
3 Has he got time?
4 Do you know her?
5 He went to visit his family.

练习

20.1

写出下列单词。

EXAMPLE

/hed/ ......head......

1 /hæt/	4 /hɑːf/ ....
2 /haʊ/	5 /haɪ/ ....
3 /həʊm/	6 /huː/ ....

B51 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

20.2

B52 听录音，完成下面的对话。

A: Excuse me, can you tell me ......how...... to get to the castle?
B: Yes. Go past the .... and the .... , then there's a road .... those .... You go up a .... , and the castle's at the top.
A: Thanks for your .... !

核对书后的答案，再听一遍录音并跟读。

20.3

用下列单词完成图片的标题。

half hand home perhaps who happy happen hours ~~helping~~ how
hi house holiday how history



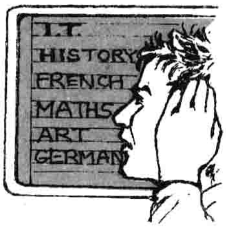
1 A ......helping......
....



2 A ....
....



3 .... many
.... ?



4 .... ,
.... ?



5 .... a
....



6 .... did it
.... ?



7 .... !
.... 's at
.... ?

B53 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

20.4

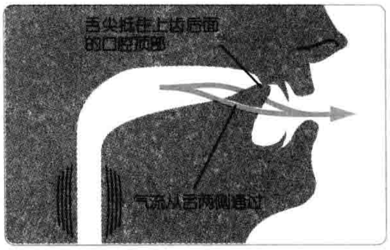
B54 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。核对书后的答案。如果感到困难，可到“Section E3: Sound pairs（音素对比）”进行更多的练习。

1 *hear / ear* (⇒ 音素对比 37)
2 *high / eye* (⇒ 音素对比 37)

21 That's life!
/l/

A 如何发/l/音

B55a • 看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。舌尖抵住上齿后面的口腔顶部，气流从舌两侧通过，声带振动。（发/l/音时，如果你不要呼气而是吸气，能感觉到气流从舌两侧流过。）目标音：/lllll/



B 音素与拼写

B55b • 字母l或字母组合ll通常发/l/音。听录音，读这些单词。

l **l**earn **l**eave **l**anguage **l**ove**l**y a**l**one fee**l** he**l**p Eng**l**ish
ll ta**ll** we**ll** ye**ll**ow

B55c • 一些单词词尾的/l/音发音较长。听录音，读这些单词。

peop**le** simp**le** unc**le** litt**le**

B55d • 一些单词中的字母l不发音。听录音，读这些单词。

half talk could

B55e • 听录音，读这些句子。

1. When shall we leave?
2. Are you alone?
3. How do you feel?
4. Can I help you?
5. Look at those lovely little yellow flowers.
6. Learning a language can be difficult for some people.

练习

21.1

写出下列单词。

EXAMPLE

/fiːl/ ....feel....

1 /leɪt/ ....

2 /laɪt/ ....

3 /lɑːdʒ/ ....

4 /kəʊld/ ....

5 /'teɪbl/ ....

6 /'æpl/ ....

7 /'lɜːnɪŋ/ ....

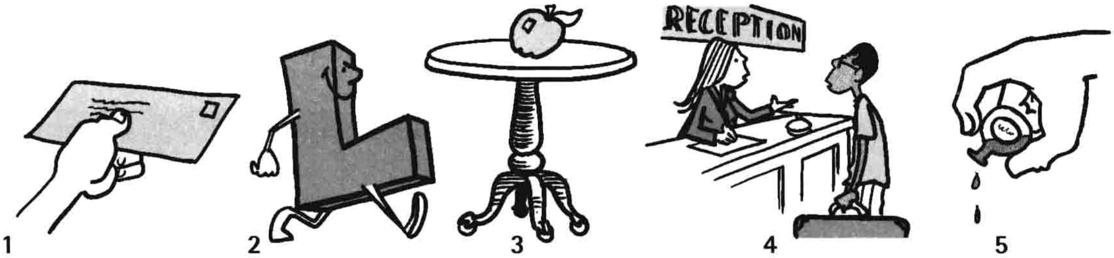
8 /bɪ'ləʊ/ ....

B56 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

21.2

看图片，用下列单词完成句子。

hello double middle bottle ~~letter~~ litter table alphabet single letter little apple



1 2 3 4 5

1 Did you say the ....letter.... box or the .... bin?

2 .... My name's L. I'm the twelfth .... of the ....

3 There's an .... in the .... of the ....

4 Would you like a .... room or a .... ?

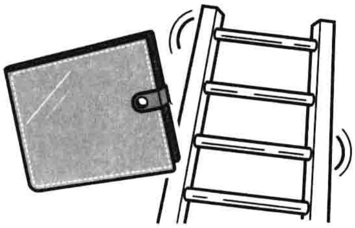
5 What's in that .... ?

B57 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

21.3

B58 听录音，完成下列故事。

Monday	My bus was ....late.... .
Tuesday	I .... my wallet.
Wednesday	I .... off a ladder.
Thursday	I caught a ....
Friday	I .... at work.
That's .... !	



核对书后的答案，再听一遍录音并跟读。

21.4

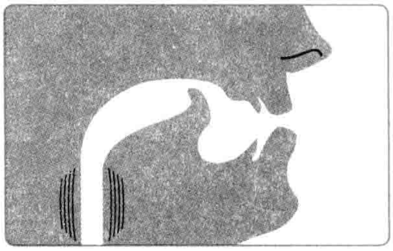
B59 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。核对书后的答案。如果感到困难，可到 "Section E3: Sound pairs（音素对比）" 进行更多的练习。

1 *light / right* (⇒ 音素对比 36)

2 *collect / correct* (⇒ 音素对比 36)

22 What terrible weather! /r/

A 如何发/r/音



B60a
- 看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。舌尖朝后指向口腔顶部，舌头轻触两侧牙齿，声带振动。目标音：/rrrrr/

B 音素与拼写

B60b
- 字母r或字母组合rr通常发/r/音，有时wr也发这个音。听录音，读这些单词。

r	**r**ed	**r**eady	**r**eally	**r**ight	**r**oad	**r**oom
rr	fe**rr**y	so**rr**y				
wr	**wr**ap	**wr**ist	**wr**ite	**wr**itten	**wr**ote	

B60c
- 听录音，读这些短语和句子。

1 What are you **r**eading?
2 I'm **r**eally so**rr**y – your **r**oom isn't **r**eady.
3 I don't know if I'm **r**ight or **wr**ong.
4 Too much **wr**iting makes my **wr**ist ache.
5 t**r**avelling by fe**rr**y
6 **wr**apping p**r**esents for Ch**r**istmas

B60d 听力要点
- 一些说英语的人在说话中发/r/音有所不同。听录音中其他人如何读同样的句子，注意他们发/r/音时的不同。

B60e
- 只有当字母r后跟有元音音素时——无论是同一个单词中还是下一个单词开头——大多数英格兰人、威尔士人和澳大利亚人才会发/r/音。

four	不发/r/音
forty	不发/r/音
four days	不发/r/音
four eggs	发/r/音
four hours	发/r/音

B60f
- 但是，对于大多数美国人、苏格兰人、爱尔兰人和英格兰西南部的人而言，只要单词中有字母r，都会发/r/音。听录音。

four	发/r/音
forty	发/r/音
four days	发/r/音
four eggs	发/r/音
four hours	发/r/音

⚠ 注意：字母R的发音为/ɑː/——或/ɑːr/（对于总是将字母r发音的讲话者）。听录音。
B60g

练习

22.1 将下列音标所对应的单词填在正确的横线上。

/ruːm/ /ˈɪərɪŋ/ /ɔːlˈredi/ /ˈrekɔːdz/ /reɪn/ /əˈraɪv/ /raʊnd/ /ˈbɒrəʊd/ /əˈdres/
/ˈrʌnɪŋ/ /ˈrʌbɪʃ/ /ˈhʌri/ /~~rɒk~~/ /ˈterɪbl/ /ˈrɪəli/ /reɪs/ /raɪt/ /ˈwʌri/ /ˈredi/ /əˈfreɪd/



1 Hey, look! I found these old ....rock.... .... in a .... bin!
2 .... again – what .... weather!
3 Are you .... sure this is the .... ?
4 Stop .... the .... ! We've got to get .... to go out.
5 A: Oh, no, I've lost an ....
B: I'm .... Anna .... it!
6 A: .... up!
B: Why? It isn't a ....
A: We're .... late!
B: Don't .... , they'll wait till we ....

B61 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

22.2 B62 看下列有黑体字母r的单词。听录音，在黑体r发音的单词后面"✓"，黑体r不发音的单词后画"✗"。



1 A: Where ✓ did you park the car?
B: I'm not sure. I think it was just around the corner.
2 A: Have you ever heard of square oranges?
B: No, never!
3 A: Can you play the guitar?
B: I can play the guitar and sing.
4 A: Are we far away from the road?
B: Well, it's rather hard to say …

核对书后的答案，再听一遍录音并跟读。

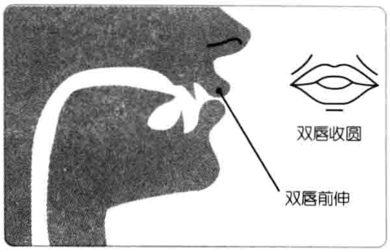
22.3 B63 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。核对书后的答案。如果感到困难，可到"Section E3: Sound pairs（音素对比）"进行更多的练习。

1 *light / right* (⇒ sound pair 36)
2 *long / wrong* (⇒ sound pair 36)
3 *collect / correct* (⇒ sound pair 36)

23 What's the news?

/w/ 和 /j/

A 如何发/w/音



B64a • 看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。/w/音的发音方法与/u:/类似，但非常短。目标音：/wə/

B 音素与拼写

B64b • 字母w通常发/w/音，有时wh或其他字母或字母组合也发这个音。听录音，读这些单词。

w	week wet way warm well weather windy away always twelve swim
wh	what white which where
	one language question quiet square

⚠ 注意：字母组合qu的发音通常为/kw/。

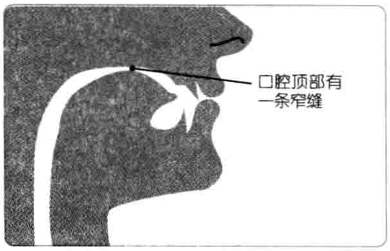
B64c 注意：一些单词不发/w/音。听录音并跟读。

answer two who whole write wrong

B64d • 听录音，读这些短语和句子。

1 swimming in warm water
2 twenty-one words
3 What's the answer?
4 quarter to twelve on Wednesday
5 twenty-two languages
6 the wrong word
7 the whole world
8 question and answer
9 Where will you be waiting?

C 如何发/j/音



B65a • 看右图。听录音，然后发这个音。/j/音的发音方法与/i:/类似，但非常短。目标音：/jə/

D 音素与拼写

B65b • 字母y通常发/j/音，有时一些其他字母或字母组合也发这个音。听录音，读这些单词。

u或ew的发音通常为/ju:/。听录音，读这些单词。

y	yes yesterday year young
/ju:/	usual student university new view interview beautiful queue
	Europe /ˈjʊərəp/

B65c • 听录音，读这些短语和句子。

1 a young university student
2 a beautiful view
3 waiting in a queue for an interview
4 the European Union
5 I usually walk to work but I used the car yesterday.

B65d

听力要点

• 美国人在一些单词中不发/j/音，例如：new, student。听录音。

发/j/音：Are you a new student? /nju: ˈstju:dənt/

不发/j/音：Are you a new student? /nu: ˈstu:dənt/

练习

23.1 写出下列单词。

EXAMPLE

/ˈjʌŋgə/ ......younger......

1 /njuːz/ ....

2 /fjuː/ ....

3 /jet/ ....

4 /ˈwiːkend/ ....

5 /tjuːnz/ ....

6 /wen/ ....

7 /ˈmjuːzɪk/ ....

8 /west/ ....

9 /ˈjeləʊ/ ....

10 /jɪə/ ....

B66 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

23.2 用给出的单词完成下列对话。

away few music quarter tunes weather Wednesday weekend west
wet when where where windy yes yesterday yet young

1 A: ......When......'s your interview?
B: It's on ...., at .... past one.
A: Good luck!

2 A: Are you going .... for the .... ?
B: ....
A: .... ?
B: I don't know ....

3 A: Hi! .... are you?
B: We're in .... Wales.
A: What's the .... like?
B: .... was .... and ....,
but today's beautiful.

4 A: Can you read .... ?
B: No, but I remember a ....
from when I was ....



B67 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

23.3 将下面访谈对话中的提问和回答匹配起来。

提问	回答
What? A wallet	In the town square.
What colour?	Yellow.
With?	Twelve.
Where?	I was waiting in a queue. They were quick. They ran away.
When?	Yesterday.
What time?	Money, keys, cards – the usual things.
Who?	Two young men.
What happened?	~~A wallet.~~

Well, we'll see what we can do.



B68 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

24 Sunglasses or umbrella?
单词中的辅音连缀

A

B69 一些单词中间只有一个辅音音素。听录音。

pa**p**er
pe**pp**er (**pp**为两个字母，但只发一个音)
wea**th**er (**th** 为两个字母，但只发一个音)
li**st**en (**st** 为两个字母，但只发一个音——字母t不发音)

B

B70a 一些单词中间有两个或三个辅音音素组成的辅音连缀（又叫“辅音群”）。听录音。

co**ld**er (**ld** 发两个音)
co**mp**uter (**mp** 发两个音)
cla**ssr**oom (**ssr** 发两个音)
si**xt**een (**xt** 发三个音/kst/)

B70b 听录音，跟读下列含有两个辅音音素的单词。注意——不要在辅音音素之间加入元音音素。

a**lph**abet
a**sk**ing
boo**ksh**op
bui**ld**ing
da**nc**ing
lo**vel**y
reme**mb**er
ti**met**able

B70c 听录音，跟读下列含有三个辅音音素的单词。

chi**ldr**en
co**mpl**ete
cou**ntr**y
dow**nst**airs
e**xp**ensive
frie**ndl**y
su**ngl**asses
u**mbr**ella

B70d 听力要点

有时不需要将每个辅音音素都发得特别清楚。听录音。

Se(p)tember	goo(d)bye
Chris(t)mas	brea(k)fast
pi(c)nic	foo(t)ball
pos(t)card	sho(p)keeper

练习

24.1

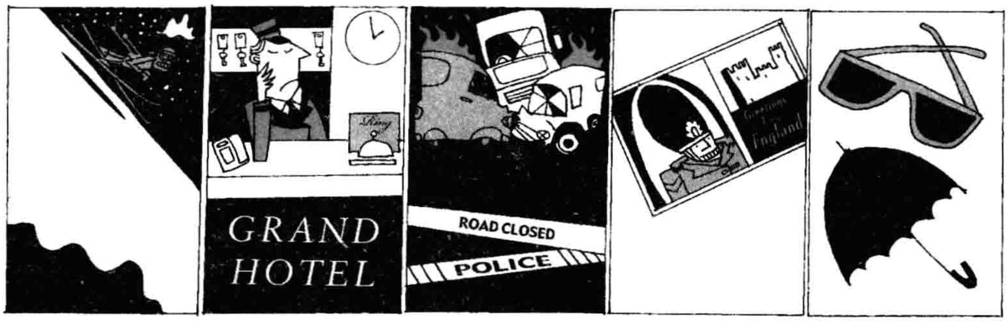
将下列单词填写完整。

1 The day after Monday is Tuesday.
2 37 + 13 = fi_ _y
3 The opposite of cheap is e_ _ e_ _ive.
4 A very short distance: a ce_ _imetre.
5 Something to write with: a pe_ _il.
6 The last month of the year is Dece_ _er.
7 The month after August is Se_ _ember.
8 The room where you sleep is the be_ _oom.
9 The tenth month of the year is O_ _ober.
10 An important test is an e_am.

B71 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

24.2

将下列单词填写完整。



1 In winter we go skiing in the _ _ _nt _ _ _ _.
2 The hotel _ _ _ _pt_ _ _ is open 24 hours a day.
3 The road was closed yesterday because of an _cc_ _ _ _ _.
4 Don't forget to send me a _ _ stc _ _ _ from England.
5 Shall I take my _ _ngl_ _ _ _ _ or my _mbr_ _ _ _ ?

B72 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

24.3

在下面对话中的单词里的辅音连缀下面画线。



1 A: How's your English?
B: I think I need to practise more – I have problems with making sentences, and tenses, and pronunciation, and listening, and answering questions, and conversation, and I make too many mistakes …
A: Don't worry, it's not so bad! You're almost an expert!



2 A: Where's my passport?
B: I don't know. In your suitcase, maybe?
A: Where's my suitcase?
B: Upstairs, in the wardrobe.
A: Right. And where's the envelope that was on the kitchen table?
B: In the wastepaper basket – was it important?

B73 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

25 Train in the rain
词首的辅音连缀

A

B74 一些单词词首只有一个辅音音素。听录音。

late
rain
white　　(wh为两个字母，但只发一个音)

B

一些单词词首有两个或三个辅音音素组成的辅音连缀。听录音并跟读这些单词。注意——不要在辅音音素之间加入元音音素。

B75a 词首有两个辅音音素的单词：

plate
train
quite　　(qu的发音为/kw/)

B75b 词首有三个辅音音素的单词：

spring
street
square　　(squ的发音为/skw/)

B75c 下面是一些其他的例子。听录音并跟读。

1	**br**ead	Pass me some **br**ead.
2	**pr**ice	What's the **pr**ice?
3	**bl**ess	*(sneeze)* **Bl**ess you!
4	**cl**ass	How many are there in your **cl**ass?
5	**gl**ass	Where are my **gl**asses?
6	**cr**eam	Do you like ice **cr**eam?
7	**qu**iet	Isn't it **qu**iet?
8	**sp**ell	How do you **sp**ell it?
9	**st**and	Where shall I **st**and?
10	**sw**im	Can you **sw**im?
11	**str**anger	I'm a **str**anger here.
12	**str**ess	a job with a lot of **str**ess



练习

25.1 B76 听录音，圈出每句话中你所听到的单词。

1	(dress)	address
2	rain	train
3	miles	smiles
4	cool	school
5	sleep	asleep
6	rain	train
7	dress	address
8	sleep	asleep
9	miles	smiles
10	cool	school
11	win	twin
12	win	twin

核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读这些句子。

25.2 用下面3列中的音素组成尽可能多的单词，组合方式可以为：1+2，1+2+3，或2+3。

	第1列	第2列	第3列
	g r	eɪ	t
1	l p t r	eɪ	n t
2	f t θ s r	iː	t
3	s n l	əʊ	z p
4	f r l	aɪ	t

EXAMPLE grey, great, gate, eight

B77 核对书后的答案，听录音并跟读。

25.3 将下列单词填写完整。要填的是两个辅音字母，并且发音为两个辅音音素。

1 I don't like travelling by p l ane.
2 The sky's _ _ue today.
3 What would you like to _ _ink?
4 Is it the _ _elfth today?
5 Is this seat _ _ee?
6 It's five o'_ _ock.
7 How many languages can you _ _eak?
8 Don't sit on that dirty _ _oor.

B78 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。



I don't like travelling by plane.

26 Pink and orange
词尾的辅音连缀

A

B79a 一些单词词尾只有一个辅音音素。听录音。

sto**p**
si**ck** (ck为两个字母，但只发一个音/k/)

B79b 一些单词词尾有两个或三个辅音音素组成的辅音连缀。听录音。

sto**ps** (ps发两个音)
sta**mp** (mp发两个音)
si**x** (x为一个字母，但发两个音/ks/)
sta**mps** (mps发三个音/mps/)
si**xth** (xth发三个音/ksθ/)

B

B80 听录音，跟读下列词尾有两个辅音音素的单词。注意——不要在辅音音素之间加入元音音素。

arri**ved**
a**sk**
bui**ld**
da**nce**
fi**nd**
fini**shed**
he**lp**
sto**ps**
sta**mp**
si**x**

C

B81a 听录音，跟读下列词尾有三个辅音音素的单词。注意——不要在辅音音素之间加入元音音素。

a**sks**
bui**lds**
cri**sps**
da**nced**
he**lps**
si**xth**
sta**mps**

B81b 听力要点

有时不需要将每个辅音音素都发得特别清楚。听录音。

sto(p)s	hel(p)	frien(d)s
as(k)	stam(p)	wan(t)s
stam(p)s	hel(p)ed	buil(d)s

练习

26.1 B82 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

1	cold	colder	6	old	older
2	cold	colder	7	sent	centre
3	dance	dancer	8	sent	centre
4	dance	dancer	9	fast	faster
5	old	older	10	fast	faster

核对书后的答案，再听一遍录音并跟读。

26.2 B83 听录音，用**练习26.1**中的单词填空完成下列句子。

1 Yesterday was ......cold...... , but today's ....
2 My wife's a good .... but I can't .... at all.
3 I'm .... than you, but not too .... to learn English.
4 I .... my daughter to buy some things in the shopping ....
5 The bus is .... but the train's ....

核对书后的答案，再听一遍录音并跟读。

26.3 在下面对话中的单词词尾的辅音连缀下面画线。

1



2



1 A: Have you seen that film? B: No, I haven't.
2 A: Be there at six. B: Is that when it starts?
3 A: Have you been to France? B: Yes, once.
4 A: How do you say 'Hello' in French? B: I can't speak French.
5 A: Have some of these biscuits. B: No, thanks, I don't like them.
6 A: I found some money in the street today. B: How much? A: Fifty pence.
7 A: What's for lunch? B: Fish and chips.
8 A: I only slept six hours last night. B: I didn't sleep at all!
9 A: What colour are your new gloves? B: Pink and orange!

B84 核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

26.4 用方框中的单词完成短语。

boots physics west silence
thousands isn't banks ~~last~~

Example
first and ......last......
1 maths and ....
2 it wasn't and it ....
3 hundreds and ....
4 socks and ....
5 shops and ....
6 sound and ....
7 from east to ....

B85 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

27 Last week
单词间的辅音连缀

A

B86 有时前一个单词的词尾是一个辅音或辅音连缀，后一个单词的词首是一个辅音或辅音连缀，这时需要将这些辅音作为一个辅音连缀来读。听录音。

thi**s**‿**t**ime
a pla**ne**‿**t**icket
a po**p**‿**st**ar
an Engli**sh**‿**cl**ass
the ne**xt**‿**w**ord
ora**nge**‿**j**uice
thi**s**‿**m**orning
ti**me**‿**t**o go
an o**ld**‿**c**astle



A pop star



An old castle

B87 有时候并不是每一个辅音都能听清楚。听录音并跟读。

听力要点

sto**p**‿**th**e game	sto(p) the game
la**st**‿**w**eek	las(t) week
ba**ck**‿**t**o work	ba(ck) to work
an**d**‿**th**en ...	an(d) then ...
put your ba**g**‿**d**own	put your ba(g) down

B

B88 有时辅音连缀中的某个辅音音素会发生变化。听录音并跟读。

te**n**	te**n**‿**b**oys	(n听起来像m)
	te**n**‿**g**irls	(n听起来像/ŋ/)
goo**d**	goo**db**ye	(d听起来像b)
	Goo**d**‿**g**oal!	(d听起来像g)

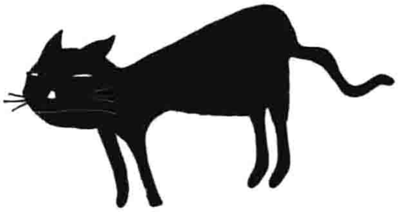


Good goal!

C

B89 如果前一个单词词尾的辅音音素和后一个单词词首的辅音音素相同，那么你通常只会听到这个音一次，但发音时间比一般情况下长。听录音并跟读。

te**n**‿**n**ights
thi**s**‿**s**ummer
so**me**‿**m**oney
enou**gh**‿**f**ood
sto**p**‿**p**laying
a goo**d**‿**d**ay
a bla**ck**‿**c**at
ca**ll**‿**l**ater



练习

27.1 B90 听录音，完成下列句子。

Example

Were you at the ....last.... meeting?

1 See you .... week.
2 Have a .... time.
3 Have a .... holiday.
4 .... me a call.
5 .... me an email.
6 .... me how you are.
7 .... me a letter.
8 .... me a present.

听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

27.2 在下面句子中单词间的辅音连缀下面画线。

Example

This is the last time.

1 It's really warm today.
2 Try this sentence.
3 I don't know what to do.
4 Look through all the photos.
5 Check the answer.
6 I'd like to ask you something.
7 Is this the right place?
8 I haven't listened to this CD yet.
9 The meeting's on Monday.
10 The potatoes aren't cooked yet.



B91 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

27.3 用方框中的单词完成短语，有些单词可以多次使用。

~~this~~ young cheap white big next black last old small

....this.... month	.... month	.... month
a/an .... town	a/an .... town	a/an .... town
a/an .... cat	a/an .... cat	a/an .... cat
a/an .... cat	a/an .... cat	a/an .... cat
.... clothes	.... clothes	.... clothes
.... clothes	.... clothes	.... clothes

B92 核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

28 One house, two houses
音节

A

C2a 听下面三列单词。第1列单词有三部分——它们有三个音节；第2列单词有两个音节；第3列单词只有一个音节。

1	2	3
in-ter-net	six-ty	six
un-der-line	un-der	line
un-der-lined	u-nit	lines
al-pha-bet	hou-ses	house
con-so-nant	go-ing	goes

C2b 一些单词有三个以上的音节，例如：单词television有四个音节；单词geographical有五个音节。听录音。

te-le-vi-sion
ge-o-gra-phi-cal

C2c 最简单的一类音节只有一个元音音素，如/uː/。当一个人感到高兴或惊讶时，经常会发出/uː/这个元音（通常写作Ooh）。听录音。

Ooh, that's nice!
Ooh, thank you very much!



Ooh, thank you very much!

C2d 在有些音节中，元音音素之前有一个或多个辅音音素。听录音。

/s/ + /uː/ = /suː/ 这是人名Sue的发音。
/bl/ + /uː/ = /bluː/ blue

C2e 在有些音节中，元音音素之后有一个或多个辅音音素。听录音。

/iː/ + /t/ = /iːt/ eat
/iː/ + /st/ = /iːst/ east

C2f 在有些音节中，元音音素前后都有辅音音素。听录音。

/nj/ + /uː/ + /z/ = /njuːz/ news
/f/ + /iː/ + /ldz/ = /fiːldz/ fields
/str/ + /iː/ + /t/ = /striːt/ street

B

C3a 通常情况下，一个单词中音节的个数是元音音素的个数——不是元音字母的个数。听录音。

worked (有两个元音字母，但只有一个元音音素/wɜːkt/，因此只有一个音节)
different (有三个元音字母，但只有两个元音音素/ˈdɪfrənt/，因此只有两个音节)
interesting (有四个元音字母，但只有三个元音音素/ˈɪntrəstɪŋ/，因此只有三个音节)

C3b 有时，辅音/l/不需要元音音素就可以单独作为一个音节（叫做“成音节”）。听录音。

bottle (两个音节 /ˈbɒ/ + /tl/)
syllable (三个音节 /ˈsɪ/ + /lə/ + /bl/)
It'll be ready soon. (两个音节 /ɪt/ + /l/)

练习

28.1 下列单词中分别有多少个音节？将音节的个数写在单词右侧的方框中。

eyes [1] why [ ] white [ ] write [ ] writing [ ] glass [ ] glasses [ ]
university [ ] business [ ] information [ ]

C4a 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案。

C4b 听录音并跟读这些句子。

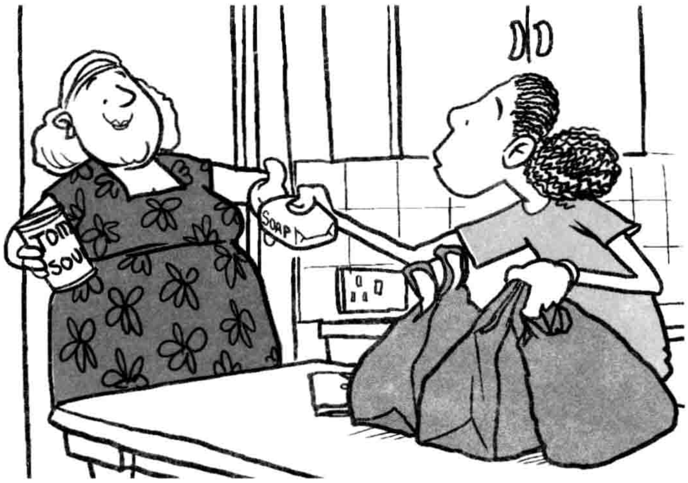
1 I've got blue eyes.
2 I don't know why.
3 Black coffee or white?
4 Will you write to me?
5 What are you writing?
6 Is this your glass?
7 I don't wear glasses.
8 Where's the university?
9 Business is business.
10 There's the information office.

28.2

1 表示一周哪一天的单词有三个音节?
2 表示一周其他六天的单词分别有几个音节?
3 1至20之间表示哪些数字的单词有三个音节?
4 字母表中哪个字母的发音多于一个音节?
5 表示哪些月份的单词只有一个音节?

C5 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

28.3 阅读下面的故事，标出所有有两个或三个音节的单词。



I remember(3) once on my first visit(2) to England( ), soon after( ) I started( ) learning( ) English( ), my landlady( ) went shopping( ) and she came back with a big bag full of things, but she forgot( ) to buy some soup – she needed( ) a tin of tomato( ) soup. So I said, 'I'll go to the shop and buy it for you,' because( ) I wanted( ) to be helpful( ) and it was a chance to practise( ) my English( ) a bit. So I went to the little( ) shop round the corner( ) and asked the shopkeeper( ) for tomato( ) soup. But he seemed surprised( ), he didn't( ) understand( ), and I repeated( ) again( ) and again( ) 'soup, tomato( ) soup' until( ) he gave me some red soap, and I realised( ) I'd confused( ) 'soup' and 'soap' and I was asking( ) for 'tomato( ) soap'. I felt terrible( ), I wanted( ) to run out of the shop, but my landlady( ) wanted( ) her soup, so I said, 'Thank you. And tomato( ) soup, please' – this time with the correct( ) pronunciation – and he gave me the soup. I paid and went back to the house and said to the landlady( ), pronouncing( ) very( ) carefully( ), 'Here's your soup, and I bought you this soap as a present( ),' and she said, 'Ooh, thank you very much, that's very( ) nice of you!'

C6 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案。然后听录音并大声朗读上面的故事。

29 Wait a minute – where's the waiter?

强元音和弱元音

A

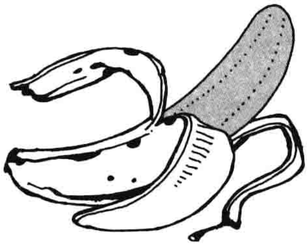
C7a 单词London中有两个元音音素，都是由字母o发出的——London——但发音不同。第一个字母o发出的音清晰、有力，而第二个字母o发出的音则较弱。仔细听录音，注意区别。

London



C7b 单词banana中有三个元音音素，都是由字母a发出的——banana。第二个字母a发出的音清晰、有力，而第一个和第三个字母a发出的音则较弱。听录音。

banana



重读音节（见第30~32单元）中有强元音音素，而非重读音节中通常有弱元音音素。

单词London和banana中的弱元音是/ə/。

London /'lʌndən/
banana /bə'nɑːnə/

C8a 有时，很难听到发/ə/音。

听力要点

London
I have to go to London tomorrow.
banana
Would you like a banana?

上面这一点对于听英语非常重要，因为这种现象增加了辨别单词的难度。讲英语时，不需要将弱元音发得如此弱，但重要的是能够清楚地区别开重读（强）音节和非重读（弱）音节。

C8b 听下面两个句子中其他的弱元音。

w s w s w s w w s w
I have to go to London tomorrow.
<u>have</u> – <u>go</u> – <u>Lon</u> – <u>morr</u>中的元音是强元音（s），其他的是弱元音（w）。

w w s w w s w
Would you like a banana?
<u>like</u> – <u>na</u>中的元音是强元音（s），其他的是弱元音（w）。

B

有时弱元音会使不同的词语听起来一样。看下面三个句子。

Where's the waiter?
Is this the way to the school?
Can you wait a minute?

waiter, way to和wait a听起来一样：/'weɪtə/。

C9 听上面三个句子并跟读。

练习

29.1 在下面的单词中，*代表弱元音/ə/。写出单词的完整形式。

EXAMPLE
lett* ....letter........

1 Brit*n ....
2 t*day ....
3 *meric* ....
4 p*lice ....
5 *noth* ....
6 *gain ....
7 mount*n ....

C10a 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案。

C10b 听录音，跟读下列短语。

1 Great Brit*n
2 arriving t*day
3 going to *meric*
4 call th* p*lice
5 have *noth*
6 say it *gain
7 climb the mount*n

29.2 看下面的句子，找出第1列和第2列句子中发音相同的单词和短语。

EXAMPLE
Where's the waiter? – Can you wait a minute?



Where's the waiter?

第1列
~~Where's the waiter?~~
Not at all.
Look in the cellar.
It takes a long time.
Smoking isn't allowed.
I'd like to live in a newer house.

第2列
I heard a loud noise.
You'll see a tall building on your left.
My father knew a lot about music.
~~Can you wait a minute?~~
I'm trying to sell a house.
Walk along the beach.

C11 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

29.3 写出下列单词。

EXAMPLE
/prə'naʊns/ ....pronounce........

1 /ə'merɪkə/ ....
2 /'sentəns/ ....
3 /'dɪfrənt/ ....
4 /'maʊntən/ ....
5 /tə'deɪ/ ....
6 /'letə/ ....
7 /pə'liːs/ ....
8 /ə'gen/ ....

C12 核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

30 Single or return?
双音节单词的重音

A

C13a 在双音节单词中，一个音节比另一个音节读得重，该音节叫做重读音节。在单词answer中，第一个音节重读。（也可以说：“重音在第一音节上。”）听录音。

answer

C13b 在单词again中，第二个音节重读。（重音在第二音节上。）听录音。

a**gain**

C13c 很多双音节单词的重音在第一个音节上，而非重读音节中的元音音素一般为弱读音素/ə/。听录音并跟读。

brother **butt**er **fath**er **fin**ger **fin**ish **glass**es **lis**ten **moth**er **num**ber **sec**ond **sis**ter **wat**er **wo**man

C13d 有时非重读音节中没有元音音素（而是成音节）。听录音并跟读。

apple **peo**ple **sim**ple **ta**ble **tra**vel

C13e 一些双音节单词的重音在第二音节上。听录音并跟读。

a**gree** a**lone** a**rrive** a**sleep** a**wake**
be**cause** be**gin** be**hind**
com**plete**
de**cide**
ex**am** ex**plain** ex**press**
per**haps** pro**nounce**
re**peat** re**turn**

B

如果用O代表重读音节，o代表非重读音节，单词answer，brother，butter可表示为Oo；单词again, because, decide可表示为oO。

在词典中，通常将重音符号 ' 标在重读音节前。

answer /'ɑːnsə/
again /ə'gen/





练习

30.1 C14 听录音，圈出重音不同的一个单词。

EXAMPLE

oO	oO	oO	Oo
exam	excuse	explain	(extra)

1	actor	after	afraid	also
2	before	belong	better	between
3	paper	pencil	picture	police
4	coffee	colour	concert	correct
5	English	enjoy	evening	every

听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

30.2 用下面给出的字母组合组成不同的单词，并写入正确的一栏。

a **turn** **re** **long** **ing** **er** **sleep**

重音在第一个音节的单词	重音在第二个音节的单词
......longer......	....
....	....
....	....

C15 核对书后的答案，听录音并跟读。

30.3 下列短语都有五个音节。O代表重读音节，o代表非重读音节。根据提示将每一个短语写入正确的一组。

~~teacher or student?~~ the same or different?
single or return? behind or in front?
asleep or awake? perhaps or maybe?
finish or begin? reading or writing?

OooOo 1 ......teacher or student?......
2 ....

OoooO 1 ....
2 ....

oOoOo 1 ....
2 ....

oOooO 1 ....
2 ....

C16 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

30.4 将重音符号ˈ标在正确的位置并写出下列单词。

EXAMPLE

/əraɪv/ → /əˈraɪv/ ......arrive......

1 /sɪstə/ ....
2 /rɪlæks/ ....
3 /piːpl/ ....
4 /fɪnɪʃ/ ....
5 /kəmpliːt/ ....
6 /teɪbl/ ....
7 /prənaʊns/ ....

C17 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

31 Begin at the beginning
多音节单词的重音

A

C18 一些单词由两个以上音节构成。每个单词中都有一个重读音节。听录音并跟读。O代表重读音节，o代表非重读音节。

Ooo
exercise — **syll**able — There are three syllables in the word *exercise*.

oOo
com**put**er — ex**am**ple — *Computer* is an example of a three-syllable word.

ooO
under**stand** — Japa**nese** — I can't understand Japanese.

Oooo
supermarket — Do you like small shops or supermarkets?

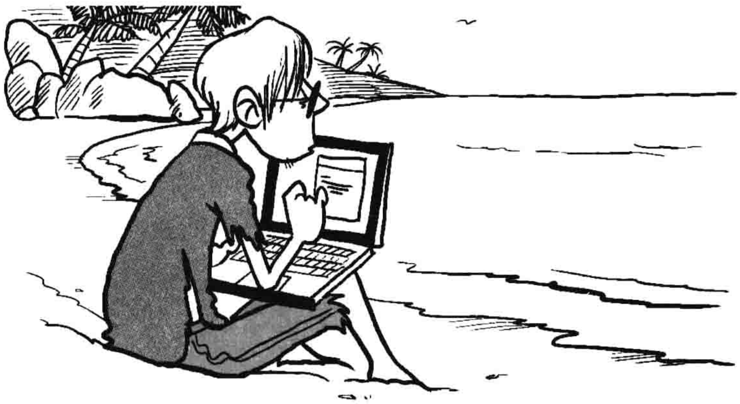
oOoo
pho**to**graphy — Are you interested in photography?

ooOo
infor**ma**tion — mathe**ma**tics — I'd like some information about mathematics courses.

oOooo
vo**ca**bulary — Will you help me with my vocabulary?

ooOoo
uni**ver**sity — Which university did you go to?

oooOo
communi**ca**tion — Email is very helpful for communication.



B

C19a 当一个单词中的音节增加时，重音位置经常保持不变。听录音并跟读。

be**gin** → be**ginn**ing
de**cid**e → de**cid**ed
possible → im**po**ssible
sentence → **sen**tences
interest → **in**teresting

C19b 但有时重音会转移。听录音并跟读。

e**lec**tric → elec**tri**city
pro**nounce** → pronunci**a**tion
photograph → pho**to**graphy
ex**plain** → expla**na**tion

练习

31.1 写出下列单词。

EXAMPLE /bɪˈɡɪnɪŋ/ beginning

1 /ˈɪntəvjuː/ ....
2 /mjuːˈziːəm/ ....
3 /mæɡəˈziːn/ ....
4 /ˈdefɪnətli/ ....
5 /əˈmerɪkən/ ....
6 /pɒlɪˈtɪʃən/ ....
7 /næʃəˈnæləti/ ....
8 /fəˈtɒɡrəfi/ ....

C20 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

31.2 C21a 听录音，将下列单词写入正确的一栏。

~~adjective~~ alphabet cinema eleven furniture grandmother important reception remember tomorrow

Ooo	oOo
adjective	....
....	....
....	....
....	....
....	....

C21b 核对书后的答案，再听一遍录音并跟读。

31.3 完成下列句子。从方框中选择与重音类型相对应的单词。不需要用到每一个单词。

afternoon bicycle conversation ~~delicious~~ discussion exercises expensive holiday morning normally often Saturday seventeen seventy sixty Sunday Sweden Switzerland telephone today yesterday

1 We had a oOo delicious meal on Ooo ....
2 We Ooo .... go on Ooo .... by car, but this time we're going by Ooo ....
3 I did ten grammar Oooo .... Ooo ....
4 Is Ooo .... an oOo .... country?
5 My son's ooO .... and my father's Ooo ....
6 I had a long Ooo .... ooOo .... this ooO ....

C22 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

31.4 有六个表示一年中月份的单词包含三个或四个音节，将其写在正确的横线上。

Oooo ....
oOo September ....

C23 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

32 Where's my checklist?
复合词的重音

A

我们经常将两个单词组合在一起构成复合词，例如，class + room → classroom。有些复合词连在一起写，有些用连字符（-）连起来。

class + room → classroom
car + park → car park
second + hand → second-hand

C24 通常情况下，复合词的重音在第一构成词上。听录音并跟读。

Oo	**air**port **bath**room **bus** stop **car** park **class**room **foot**ball **girl**friend
Ooo	**bus** station **din**ing room **hair**dresser **news**paper **post** office **sun**glasses
Oooo	**pho**tocopy **rail**way station **shop** assistant
oOoo	po**lice** station
oOooo	com**pu**ter programme



B

C25a 如果复合词的第一构成词是形容词，那么两个构成词都重读。听录音并跟读。

OoO	**sing**le **room**

C25b 如果复合词的第一构成词所表示的是第二构成词的材料，那么两个构成词都重读。听录音并跟读。

OO	**glass jar**
OoO	**plas**tic **bag**
oOoO	to**ma**to **soup**

C25c 如果复合词的第一构成词能说明第二构成词所处的位置，那么两个构成词都重读。听录音并跟读。

OO	**car door** **front door** **ground floor**
OoOo	**ci**ty **cen**tre **kit**chen **win**dow

C25d 如果复合词是形容词，通常两个构成词都重读。听录音并跟读。

OO	**first-class** **half-price** **home-made**
OoO	**sec**ond-**hand**

练习

32.1 C26 听录音，圈出重音不同的一个复合词。在例子中，复合词back door的两个构成词都重读，而其他复合词则是第一构成词重读。

EXAMPLE
computer screen (back door) alarm clock bank manager
1 toothache night club crossroads half-price
2 motorbike waiting room second class traffic lights
3 mobile phone credit card swimming pool check-in desk
4 travel agent city centre tourist visa supermarket

32.2 用下列给出的单词组成五个复合词。

第一构成词：ear wine hand birthday boy
第二构成词：friend bar present bag rings

....

用这些合成词完成下列对话。



A: Oh no, I can't find my ....!
B: Have you looked in your ....?
A: Of course!
B: Maybe you left them in that .... last night?
A: Oh no, maybe I did!
B: Are they important?
A: Yes – they were a .... from my ....!

C27 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案。再听一遍录音，并圈出每个复合词中重读的部分。然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

32.3 C28 听下面的短诗。圈出下画线上复合词的重读部分。

Checklist
Have I …
… set the <u>(alarm) clock</u>?
… and put it on the <u>bedside table</u>?
… put my <u>plane ticket</u> in my <u>trouser pocket</u>?
… packed my <u>toothbrush</u>?
… put my <u>suitcase</u> by the <u>bedroom door</u>?
… switched the <u>CD player</u> off?
… phoned the <u>taxi driver</u> to say 'Be here at six'?
Have I …
Have I …
… Where's my <u>checklist</u>?!



核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

33 Phrases and pauses
大声朗读

A 当你在听英语时，可能由于对方语速过快而难以理解。或许你也希望自己能说得快一些。但是一个人讲英语——或其他任何一门语言——并不是快得没有停顿，而是一个短语一个短语地说，在说完一个短语后停止或停顿。

B 首先，阅读下面的故事，确保你可以理解它的意思。

> Lots of people get arrested for dangerous driving, of course. But how old is the oldest? Who's the world record holder? Well, I read about a man who was a hundred and four! He went through red lights, crashed into parked cars and drove along the pavement. And how old was his car? Only thirty.

C29a 然后，听这个故事，并跟录音一起朗读，注意每行间的停顿。

> Lots of people get arrested for dangerous driving,
> of course.
> But how old is the oldest?
> Who's the world record holder?
> Well,
> I read about a man
> who was a hundred and four!
> He went through red lights,
> crashed into parked cars
> and drove along the pavement.
> And how old was his car?
> Only thirty.



C29b 如果停顿的次数更多也可以，甚至更好，因为你可以有更多时间思考将要说什么，听众也更容易理解。再听另一个版本的录音——同样的文字，但停顿更多。

> Lots of people
> get arrested
> for dangerous driving,
> of course.
> But
> how old
> is the oldest?
> Who's the world record holder?
> Well,
> I read about a man
> who was
> a hundred and four!
> He went through red lights,
> crashed into parked cars
> and drove along the pavement.
> And how old was his car?
> Only thirty.

C29b 此外，重读最重要的单词也很关键。再听一遍录音，这一次注意粗体单词的重读。

> **Lots** of people
> get ar**rest**ed
> for **dan**gerous **driv**ing,
> of **course**.
> **But**
> **how old**
> is the **old**est?
> **Who's** the **world rec**ord holder?
> **Well**,
> **I** read about a **man**
> who was
> a **hun**dred and **four**!
> He **went** through **red lights**,
> **crashed** into **parked cars**
> and **drove** along the **pave**ment.
> And **how old** was his **car**?
> **On**ly **thir**ty.

练习朗读这个故事，一个短语一个短语地读，注意停顿和重音。

练习

33.1 C30 听下面的故事，在需要停顿的地方画斜线（/）。

A few years ago / I read in a newspaper / that the staff at a library …

> A few years ago I read in a newspaper that the staff at a library in a small town in the west of England had noticed that the number of visitors to the library was going down and down, and the number of books they were borrowing was going down even faster. They couldn't understand this, so they decided to do some research to find out the reason. They interviewed people and asked them to fill in questionnaires and so on. And guess what they discovered. The reason was simply that everybody had read all the books already!

核对书后的答案。

C30 再听一遍录音，在重读的部分下面画线。

A few years ago / I read in a newspaper / that the staff at a library …

核对书后的答案，练习自己朗读这个故事，也可以跟着录音一起读。

33.2 C31 听下面的故事，在需要停顿的地方画斜线（/）。

> This seems unbelievable but it's a true story in fact. A farmer was working in the fields with his tractor. The tractor crashed and he fell out and landed on the ground unconscious. As he fell, his mobile phone fell out of his pocket. Soon after, a bird that was flying around the fields saw the phone and started pecking it with its beak. Amazingly it dialled the number 999 and soon the emergency services arrived to help the farmer.



核对书后的答案。

C31 再听一遍录音，在重读的部分下面画线。

核对书后的答案，练习自己朗读这个故事，也可以跟着录音一起读。

提示：把上面的故事重写一遍，每停顿一次就另起一行，这样做会对练习有所帮助，例如：

A few years ago
I read in a newspaper
that the staff at a library …

⚠ **注意**：在书面写作中，用逗号表示一些重要的停顿，例如：

This seems unbelievable, but it's a true story, in fact.

34 Speak it, write it, read it
连读 1

A

我们在书面写作中，每两个单词之间会留一个空格；但是在讲话过程中，却会将很多单词连在一起说，听起来好像这些单词之间没有空隙：*whenwespeakwelinkalotofthewordstogether.*

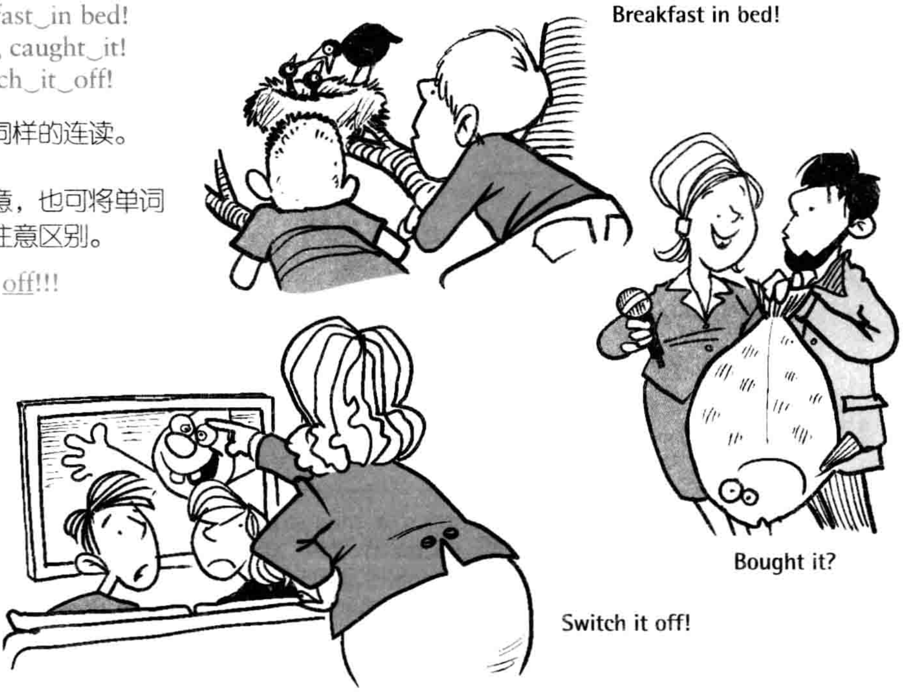
C32a 听录音，注意前一个单词词尾的辅音音素是怎样与后一个单词词首的元音音素连读的。

Look‿at that! Breakfast‿in bed!
A: Bought‿it? B: No, caught‿it!
That's‿enough! Switch‿it‿off!

读上面的句子，进行同样的连读。

C32b 当然，如果说话者愿意，也可将单词分开来读。听录音，注意区别。

I said switch … it … off!!!



B

听录音，跟读下面的诗歌。

C33a **English**
Speak‿it
Write‿it
Read‿it
You know
you really
need‿it!

C33b **Don't forget**
First you close‿it
Then you lock‿it
And put the key back‿in your pocket.

C33c **Busy**
Work‿all day
Run‿away
Boss‿and me
Can't‿agree
Fill‿a cup
Drink‿it‿up
Wait‿a while
Walk‿a mile
Meet‿at‿eight
Don't be late!

听力要点

C34a
- 单词he, his, her, him词首的字母h通常不发音（见第37单元），因此，这些单词的词首音素通常是一个元音音素。听录音。

Can we go back? My husband's forgotten‿(h)is passport.
A: Where's the boss? B: I don't know, I haven't seen‿(h)er.

C34b
- 当/t/后有一个元音时，一些讲话者不会把/t/音发得很清晰。听录音。

switch‿i(t) off drink‿i(t) up can'(t) agree

练习

34.1 将你认为应当连读的辅音和元音连起来。

1 Choose the correct‿answer and tick it.
2 Which page is it on?
3 How do you spell it?
4 How do you pronounce it?
5 What does it mean?
6 I can't understand this.
7 Look it up in your dictionary.
8 It isn't easy to speak English.
9 Listen – which language is that?
10 Don't worry if you make a mistake.

C35 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

34.2 用动词的正确形式完成下列句子。

EXAMPLE A: How did you feel?
B: I ...felt... (feel) all right.

1 A: What do you think of yoga?
B: I don't know, I've never .... (try) it.
2 A: What happened to my favourite cup?
B: It .... (fall) off the table.
3 A: Which film shall we go to?
B: I don't mind. I've .... (see) all of them before.
4 A: You look pleased.
B: Yes, I've .... (find) a new job.
5 A: What did you do last night?
B: I just .... (stay) at home.
6 A: Where did you buy that hat?
B: I .... (make) it myself!
7 A: Does your dog like biscuits?
B: I don't know, I've never .... (ask) it.
8 A: How did you get here?
B: I .... (swim) across the river.


Where did you buy that hat?

C36 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。一定要将动词词尾的辅音和后一个单词词首的元音连读。

34.3 圈出你认为应当发/r/音的字母r。（见第22单元。）

1 Where are you going?
2 Where shall we go?
3 Where did I put my scissors?
4 I don't know where I put my scissors.
5 Have another biscuit.
6 Have another apple.
7 They're all coming with us.
8 They're coming with us.
9 Are you sure?
10 Are you sure about that?

C37 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。当/r/音出现在元音之前时，要将它和元音连读。

35 Me and you, you and me
连读 2

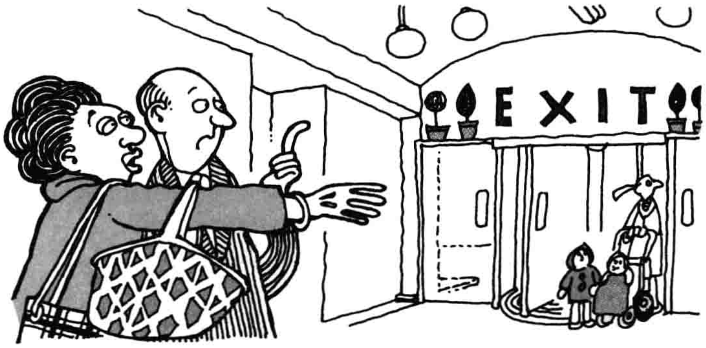
A 当前一个单词词尾的元音音素和后一个单词词首的元音音素需要连读时，我们可以添加/j/音或/w/音。

C38a 如果前一个单词词尾的元音音素是/ɪ/或/iː/，后一个单词词首是任意一个元音，我们添加/j/音进行连读。听录音。

me‿ʲand you
three‿ʲor four
the‿ʲend

C38b 如果前一个单词词尾的元音音素是/ʊ/或/uː/，后一个单词词首是任意一个元音，我们添加/w/音进行连读。听录音。

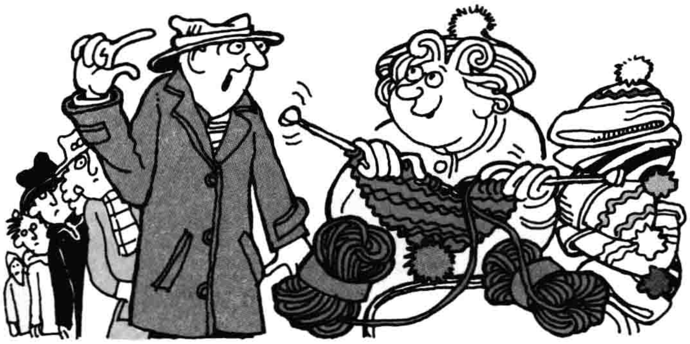
you‿ʷand me
two‿ʷor three
go‿ʷoutside



B 听录音，跟读下面的诗歌。

C39a **Asking the way**

Yes.
Go‿ʷout of the building.
Go‿ʷalong the street.
Go‿ʷover the bridge.
Go‿ʷacross the street.
Go‿ʷup the hill.
Take the‿ʲeighth street on your left.
And the‿ʲeleventh on your right.
Then …
… I'm not sure –
You'll have to‿ʷask again.



C39b **Hats**

I'll do‿ʷone for you
I'll give you‿ʷone too
a nice one
a new‿ʷone
a yellow‿ʷand blue‿ʷone.

C40 单词**he, his, her, him**词首的字母**h**通常不发音（见第37单元），因此，这些单词的词首音素通常是一个元音音素。

听力要点

He can't come out tonight. He's got to do‿ʷ(h)is homework.
A: I'm afraid the boss is busy. **B:** When can I see‿ʲ(h)er?

练习

35.1 C41 听录音，完成下列对话。标出连读时需要添加的/j/音或/w/音。

1 A: Do you ʷoften go swimming? B: Not really, I .... or twice a month.
2 A: What's .... letter in the alphabet? B: Maybe it's G or H ....?
3 A: When do .... holiday? B: We .... July or August.
4 A: What's your ....? B: Twenty-eight, Sea Avenue.
5 A: Try .... soon. B: OK, I'll send you my answer ....
6 A: Look! There's .... the mountains. B: Really? I can't ....

核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

35.2 标出你认为连读时应当添加的/j/音或/w/音。

1 Is it blue ‿ʷor grey?
2 What day is it today? Thursday or Friday?
3 Coffee or tea?
4 Where's my interview suit?
5 Play a song for me.
6 Hello. Reception? Which city is this?
7 See you in the evening.
8 Why do we always have to get up so early?








C42 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

35.3 完成下列问题的回答并标出对话中所有连读时要添加的/j/音或/w/音。

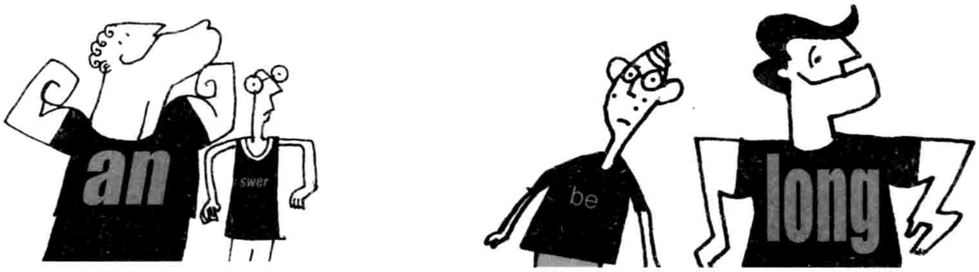
1 A: Are you the new assistant? B: Yes, I ....
2 A: Is he in the same class as you? B: No, he ....
3 A: Am I late? B: No, you .... Come in.
4 A: Is she coming with us? B: Yes, she ....
5 A: These chairs aren't very comfortable, are they? B: No, they ....

C43 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

36 Take me to the show, Jo
节奏

A C44 单词中的重读音节和非重读音节会形成不同的节奏。听录音。

Oo answer
oO belong
Ooo interview
oOo banana



B 和单词一样，短语也会有重读音节和非重读音节形成的节奏。

C45a 听录音，按照这样的节奏跟读下列单词和短语：Ooo

interview
telephone
talk to me
told you so
doesn't it?

C45b 听录音，按照这样的节奏跟读下列单词和短语：oOo

important
discussion
I told you
I'd like to
pronounce it

C45c 听录音，按照这样的节奏跟读下列单词和短语：ooOo

photographic
information
forty-seven
what about it?
never tried it

C45d 听录音，按照这样的节奏跟读下列短语：OooO

time to get up
making mistakes
tell me again
give me your hand
twenty years old

练习

36.1 C46a 阅读下列语句。听录音，在节奏为OoOo的语句后标“1”，节奏为OooO的语句后标“2”。

What's the matter? 1	What shall we do? 2	stand in the queue
What about you?	see you later	tell the others
feeling better	nothing to do	come for dinner
Anyone there?	round the corner	ready to go
on the TV	two and a half	go and find it
asking for more	What's the problem?	now and again
one pound forty	leave it to me	half a kilo
sixty-seven	breakfast's ready	quarter to four

C46b 核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

36.2 C47 听下面这首节奏为oooOO的短句，写出横线上的单词。

Pass me the ....jam........, Pam
Wait in the queue, Sue
See you ...., Jen
Leave it to me, Lee
What would you ...., Mike?
When shall we meet, Pete?
Over the ...., Bill
Where have you gone, John?
Soon as you ...., Van
Almost forgot, Scott
Lend me your ...., Ben
Where shall we go, Flo?
Get a new ...., Bob
How do you feel, Neil?
What have you ...., Dot?

核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

36.3 C48 听下面这首节奏为ooooOO的短句，写出横线上的单词。

Take me to the ....show........, Jo
Thank you for the food, Jude
See you in the ...., Mark
Really like the hat, Pat
See you on the ...., Jane
When will you be back, Jack?
Always on the ...., Joan
When did you arrive, Clive?
Have a glass of ...., Bruce.

核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

36.4 听录音，跟读下面的诗歌。注意要用正确的节奏朗读。

C49a **Too late**
Before I go –
I told you so
I told you,
but you still don't know.

C49b **Meeting**
Really can't wait
It's never too late
Quarter to eight?
That would be great.

C49c **Travel**
Heavy, light
The left and the right
I follow my feet
Through the day and the night.

C49d **Concentration**
Central station
Information
Trying to make a reservation
Not too keen on conversation
Don't want any complications.



Travel

37 Hey, wait for me!

强读式和弱读式 1：代词

A

一些单词有两种不同的发音——强读式和弱读式。一般情况下，我们使用其弱读式；但如果一个单词尤其重要，或者我们想要进行对比，需要重读这个单词，我们就要使用其强读式。大多数代词都有强读式和弱读式。

	弱读	强读
you	/jə/	/juː/
me	/mɪ/	/miː/
he	/ɪ/	/hiː/
she	/ʃɪ/	/ʃiː/
him	/ɪm/	/hɪm/
her	/ə/ or /hə/*	/hɜː/*
we	/wɪ/	/wiː/
us	/əs/	/ʌs/
them	/ðəm/	/ðem/

* 单词her词尾的字母r在元音前要发音（见第22单元）。
Give her‿a chance.

B

C50 听录音，注意区别，并跟读。

A: Will you be at the meeting on Friday? (you弱读)
B: Yes. Will you be there? (you强读)

Can you help me carry this suitcase? (me弱读)

Hey, wait for me! (me强读)

A: Is he there? (he弱读)
B: Who?
A: The boss.
B: No. Everybody else is working, but he's gone home! (he强读)

A: She doesn't smoke or drink! (she强读)
B: Ah, that's what she told you! (she弱读)

A: Look – it's him! (him强读)
B: Where? I can't see him. (him弱读)

A: Do you know that woman?
B: Her? No, I don't recognise her. (第一个her强读，第二个her弱读)

A: I'm afraid we can't stay any longer. (we弱读)
B: What do you mean, 'we'? I've got plenty of time. (we强读)

A: They told us to go this way. (us弱读)
B: Well, they didn't tell us! (us强读)

When I said, 'Give them a drink' I didn't mean them, I meant the people. (第一个them弱读，第二个them强读)



She doesn't smoke or drink.



They told us to go this way.



When I said, 'Give them a drink', I didn't mean them, I meant the people.

练习

37.1 C51 听录音，标出画线的单词是弱读（w）还是强读（s）。

1 A: Are you going to talk to him? B: No, I think he should talk to me first.
2 A: Shall I phone her? B: Yes, I think you should.
3 A: You see those people over there? Do you know them? B: I know her, but I don't know him.
4 A: What are you going to give him? B: I think I'll give him a shirt. What about you?
5 Let him come in and ask him what he wants.
6 She says she'll bring her money tomorrow.
7 I'm tired … shall we go now?
8 Everybody's leaving. What about us? Shall we go, too?
9 Tell us when you're ready.
10 A: Who broke that window? B: He did! C: No, I didn't, she did!

核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

37.2 C52 听录音，完成下列句子。

EXAMPLE
What ....did she.... say?
1 What .... think about it?
2 Where .... tonight?
3 .... ready .... now.
4 Where ....?
5 .... come in.
6 .... feeling all right?
7 Tell ....
8 I .... phone number but not ....

核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

37.3 C53 听录音，跟读下面的小诗。注意要用正确的节奏朗读。重读粗体的单词，使用重读单词之间代词的弱读式。

Comings and goings

	What	did she	**say?**
Don't	**send**	her	**away**
	Give	her a	**chance**
	Ask	her to	**dance**
	Give	us a	**drink**
	What	do you	**think?**
	Ask	them to	**wait**
	Tell	them it's	**late**
	What	shall we	**do?**
Shall we	**wait**	here for	**you?**
	Please	don't	**delay**
Tell me,	**what**	do you	**say?**



38 And what's his name?

强读式和弱读式 2：形容词性物主代词、连词、介词

A

很多形容词性物主代词、连词和介词都有两种不同的发音——强读式和弱读式。一般情况下，我们使用其弱读式，但如果一个单词尤其重要，或者我们想要进行对比，需要重读这个单词，我们就要使用其强读式。

	弱读	强读
your	/jə/ *	/jɔː/ *
his	/ɪz/	/hɪz/
their	/ðə/ *	/ðeə/ *
and	/n/ or /ən/	/ænd/
but	/bət/	/bʌt/
some	/səm/	/sʌm/
that	/ðət/	/ðæt/
at	/ət/	/æt/
for	/fə/ *	/fɔː/ *
from	/frəm/	/frɒm/
of	/əv/	/ɒv/
to **	/tə/	/tʊ/

* 这些单词词尾的字母r在元音前要发音（见第22单元）。
What's your‿address?
What was their‿answer?
Come in for‿a minute.

** 单词to在元音音素前的发音为/tuː/。
to‿a party

B

C54 听录音，注意区别，并跟读。

Give me your hand! (your弱读)

A: Your turn! (your强读)
B: No, it's your turn! (your强读)

A: That's our new neighbour.
B: And what's his name? (and和his弱读)
A: No, her! (her强读)
B: Oh, sorry. What's her name? (her强读)

A: She must be rich – look at her car! (her弱读)
B: I think that's his car, actually! (his强读)

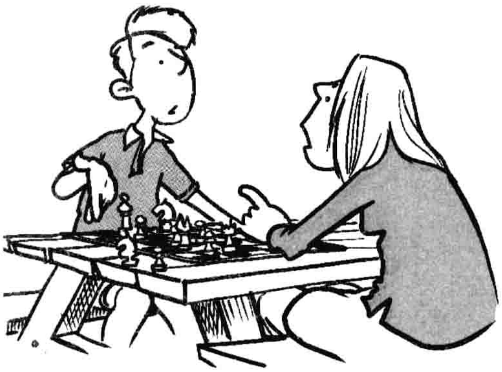
A: They've sold their old house, I see. (their弱读)
B: They've sold their house, yes, but they haven't bought another one yet. (their强读)

A: Would you like some ice cream or some cake? (some弱读)
B: I'd like some ice cream and some cake, please! (and强读, some弱读)

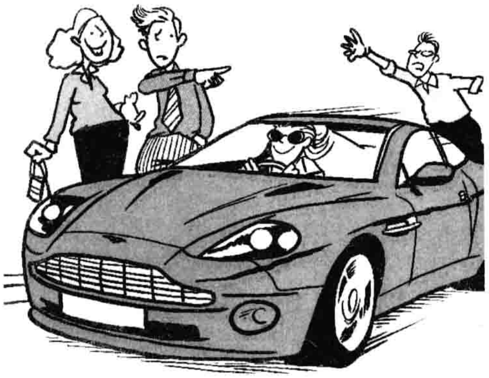
A: Do you like those sweets? (do和you弱读)
B: Well, some of them are good. (some强读, of和them弱读)

The shop's closed from one to two. (from和to弱读)

There's a bus to the village at six, but there's no bus back from there tonight. (to和from强读，at弱读)



Your turn!



She must be rich – look at her car!

练习

38.1 C55 听录音，标出画线的单词是弱读（w）还是强读（s）。

1 They went out and left their children at home.
2 Don't sit there – that's his seat.
3 Is this the train to London or from London?
4 I didn't say at five o'clock, I said about five o'clock.
5 What are you going to do?
6 His first name's Jack, but I don't know his second name.
7 Would you like some more tea?
8 Bring your umbrella – it's going to rain.
9 Excuse me – is this your umbrella?
10 Can you go and buy some bread and milk, please?
11 You've bought some flowers – who are they for?
12 I bought them for you!

核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

38.2 听录音，跟读下面的诗歌。然后再听一遍录音并跟读。注意要用正确的节奏朗读。

and弱读

C56a **You and me**
you and me
cake and tea
bread and cheese
twos and threes
this and that
thin and fat
left and right
day and night
now and then
where and when

of弱读

C56b **Relaxing**
a cup of tea
a new CD
a bottle of wine
and plenty of time

but弱读

C56c **Making plans**
A walk? But it's too late.
To the town? But it's too far.
Some sightseeing? But it's too dark.
A restaurant? But it's too expensive.
A game of chess? But it's so boring.
Read a book? But my eyes are so tired.
Study some English? But it's so difficult.
But let's do something. OK, what?

at弱读

C56d **I remember it well**
We met at a conference.
Or maybe at a party.
A party at a hotel.
Or perhaps at someone's house.
It was at lunchtime.
No, it was late at night.
Yes, and you were sitting at a table.
Or maybe standing at a window.
You looked at me and smiled.
No, you looked at me and laughed at me.
Yes, I remember it well.

your弱读

C56e **A change of plan**
Eat your sandwich.
Drink your tea.
Comb your hair.
Brush your teeth.
Put your shoes on.
Pack your bag.
Get your keys.
Ready?
What do you mean, you've changed your mind?



Making plans

39 There's a spider.

强读式和弱读式 3：冠词、比较级、"there"

A

C57a 一些单词有两种不同的发音——强读式和弱读式。对冠词a和an，在一般情况下，我们使用它们的弱读式。辅音音素前读/ə/，元音音素前读/ən/。听录音并跟读。

a cup of coffee, please
a piece of cake, please
a lot of visitors
a Thursday morning in November
an invitation to a party
an umbrella in the rain

C57b 注意一些单词的词首是元音字母u，但发音为辅音音素/j/，所以我们用a作为其冠词。听录音并跟读。

a university
a useful present

B

C58 在比较级中，对than和as，我们使用它们的弱读式/ðən/和/əz/，后缀-er发音为弱元音/ə/。听录音并跟读。

The new computer's better than the old one.
The old computer wasn't as good as the new one.

C

C59a 对含there's和there are的表达中，一般使用there的弱读式/ðə/。there's读做/ðəz/，there are读做/ˈðərə/。听录音并跟读。

There's a bridge over the river.
There are ten millimetres in a centimetre.

C59b 然而，如果用单词there指一个地方，就要使用其强读式/ðeə/。听录音并跟读。

A: Where are my glasses? **B:** Over there!



Over there!

练习



39.1 C60a 听录音，圈出图中的错误（共5处）。

C60b 核对书后的答案，再听一遍录音并跟读。

39.2 C61 听录音，圈出所有发/ə/音的部分。

There's a cat on the mat.
There's a fish in a dish.
There's a dog in the fog,
and a mouse in the house.

There's a film on TV.
You can sit on my knee.
There are two cups of tea.
One for you, one for me.

核对书后的答案，再听一遍录音并跟读。

39.3 用方框中的词语填空完成句子；有些可以多次使用。

tall   there   there's   there are   older   longer   as   than



1 Tessa's taller .... Terry, but she isn't .... Ted.
Ted's .... Tessa, but he isn't .... old .... Terry.

2 A: What's the longest tunnel in the world?
B: The Channel Tunnel, between England and France?
A: No, ... a .... one .... that.
B: Is ...., really?
A: Yes, ... is, in Japan.

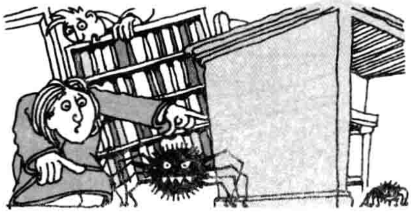
3 A: How many dollars are .... in a pound?
B: I think .... about one and a half … or maybe .... one and a half pounds in a dollar?

C62 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

39.4 C63 听录音，标出画线的单词是弱读（w）还是强读（s）。



A: What <u>are</u> <u>you</u> doing <u>there</u>?
B: <u>There</u>'s a spider in the room.
A: Is <u>there</u>? Where?
B: <u>There</u>, look!
A: No, <u>there</u> isn't!
B: Yes, <u>there</u> is!
A: Well, actually, <u>there</u> <u>are</u> two – one <u>there</u> <u>and</u> one <u>there</u>!



核对书后的答案，再听一遍录音并跟读。

40 Who was that?
强读式和弱读式 4：助动词

A 对于下列动词，我们通常使用它们的弱读式：

am is are was were have has do does can could

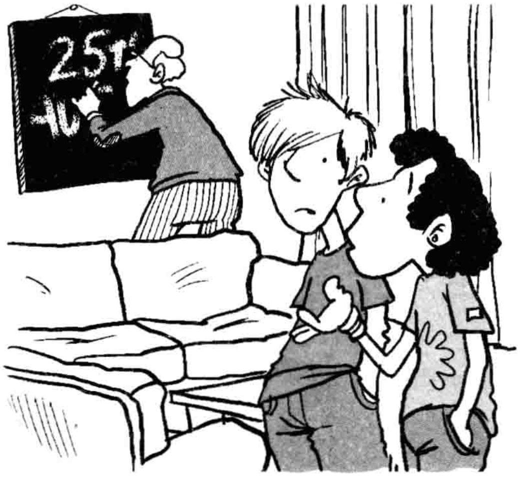
C64 听录音并跟读。

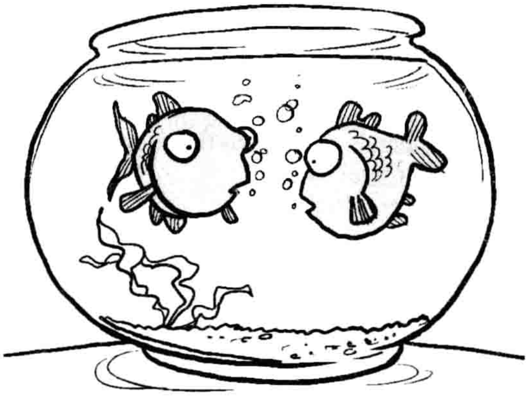
1 I'm ready.
2 It's raining again.
3 Are you coming?
4 You're coming, aren't you?
5 Who was that?
6 The shops were all closed.
7 What have you got in your hand?
8 Has the programme started?
9 What do you want for Christmas?
10 Where does your sister live?
11 You can stay here if you like.
12 Could you spell your name for me, please?

C65 但是，如果这个动词尤其重要，或者我们想要进行对比，需要重读，就要使用其强读式。

1 **A:** Are you ready? **B:** Yes, I am.
2 **A:** It isn't raining, is it? **B:** Yes, it is.
3 **A:** I'm not very good at English. **B:** Of course you are!
4 **A:** Is your father a teacher? **B:** He was, but he's retired now.
5 **A:** How many people are there in your class … ten? **B:** There were ten, but one left last week.
6 **A:** Have we met before? **B:** I don't think we have.
7 **A:** Has it started? **B:** Yes, come on, it has!
8 **A:** I don't like this music. **B:** Oh, I do.
9 **A:** Does the supermarket open on Sundays? **B:** I think it does.
10 **A:** I can't open this door. **B:** Let me try. Maybe I can.
11 **A:** Can you play tennis? **B:** Not now. I could when I was younger.

有关I'm, you're和it's的更多内容，见第41单元。


Is your father a teacher?


Have we met before?

练习



40.1 C66a 听录音，注意画线单词的弱读式（w）。

It was winter. It was late. It was dark. It was snowing. I was walking along a street. There was nobody else in the town. I could see a light in a window. I could hear someone shouting, 'You're too late! We were here, all the time. We were waiting for you, but now it's too late!' Then I woke up. It was a dream!

C66b 再听一遍录音并跟读。

40.2 C67 听录音，标出画线的单词是弱读（w）还是强读（s）。



A: I'm better than you!
B: No, you aren't!
A: I am. I've got more toys than you!
B: No, you haven't!
A: Yes, I have! And I can speak twenty languages!
B: You can't! Nobody can speak twenty languages!
A: I can. And I could walk when I was three weeks old!
B: You couldn't! That's impossible!
A: I could! You don't know – you weren't there!
B: I was! I'm older than you!
A: No, you aren't!
B: Yes, I am! I'm eight. How old are you?
A: I'm eight hundred.
B: What do you mean? Nobody can be eight hundred years old!
A: Don't argue!
B: I'm not arguing!
A: Yes, you are!

核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

40.3 在你认为应当弱读的画线单词上标w，应当强读的画线单词上标s。

1 I could speak English when I was twelve.
2 I wasn't very well yesterday, but I am today.
3 A: Are these your gloves? B: Yes, they are. Thanks!
4 A: I don't think you were at the lesson last week, were you? B: I was!
5 A: I didn't think the singers in the band were very good. B: Oh, I thought they were!
6 A: Have you got a pen? B: Just a minute, I think I have, somewhere.
7 A: Has the lesson started? B: Yes, it has, but you can go in.
8 A: Where does he live? B: Near the old town hall. Do you know where that is? A: Yes, I do.

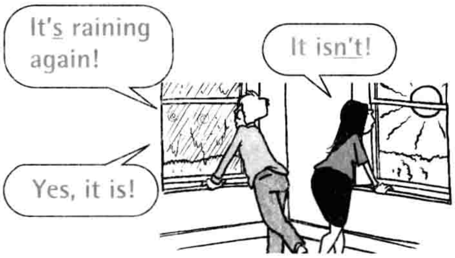
C68 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

41 They're here!
缩略式

A C69 听录音，注意弱读式（见第37~40单元）的拼写。

下面这些带撇号（'）的弱读式叫做缩略式。

完全式/强读式	缩略式/弱读式
is	's
is not	isn't



缩略式是通常情况下我们讲话的方式。在句子It's raining again!中，最重要的单词是raining，单词is不重读，因此我们使用其缩略式it's。但是在句子Yes, it is!中，单词is是最重要的单词，因此我们使用其完全式，而不用缩略式。

B C70 听录音，注意弱读式的拼写。

完全式/强读式	缩略式/弱读式
are	're



在句子They're here!中，最重要的单词是here；They're不重读，故缩略为/ðeə/或/ðə/。但是在句子They are!中，单词are是最重要的单词，因此我们使用其完全式，而不用缩略式。

⚠ 注意：缩略式's既可表示is，也可表示has。
It's raining. 's = is
Where's he gone? 's = has

下面是其他一些常见的缩略式。

完全式/强读式	缩略式/弱读式
cannot	can't
have	've
had / would	'd

完全式/强读式	缩略式/弱读式
I am	I'm
let us	let's
will	'll

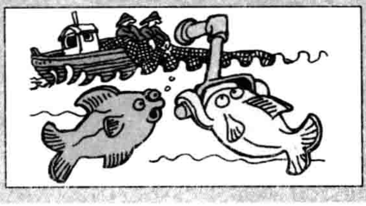
缩略式可用于各种非正式书面语以及口语中。

C71 听力和阅读要点

在连环画、流行歌曲等其他文体中，会出现下面这样的缩略式。听录音。

1 One of these days I'm gonna leave this town.
2 I just wanna have a good time.
3 Nice place, this, innit?
4 **A:** Why dontcha wanna come with us? **B:** 'Cos I hate shopping!
5 Rock 'n' roll will never die.
6 Tell 'im to come now!
7 **A:** Can you see 'em? **B:** Not yet.


2


7

going to	gonna	and	'n'
want to	wanna	them	'em
isn't it?	innit	him	'im
don't you?	dontcha	do you	d'you
because	'cos		

练习

41.1 C72 听录音，在你所听到的缩略式或完全式下面画线。

1 A: Why haven't you done the shopping?
B: *I've* / *I have* done the shopping. *It's* / *It is* on the kitchen table.
2 A: The *weather's* / *weather is* better than last year, isn't it?
B: It certainly *'s* / *is*.
3 A: Right then, *I'm* / *I am* going. Are you coming with us?
B: No, *I'll* / *I will* see you later.
4 A: *What's* / *What is* the time?
B: *It's* / *It is* twenty to seven.
5 A: They aren't ready yet.
B: *We're* / *We are* ready!
6 A: *I'd* / *I would* love to go somewhere warm for a change.
B: *I'd* / *I would*, too!
7 A: *I'm* / *I am* afraid they *haven't* / *have not* arrived yet.
B: *They've* / *They have*. *They're* / *They are* here now!
8 A: *Let's* / *Let us* go.
B: I don't think the *concert's* / *concert has* finished yet, has it?
A: *It's* / *It has*, actually.

核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。


3



5


8

41.2 C73 听录音，写出你所听到的句子的正常拼写形式。

Example
你听到：'Are you gonna be with us at the weekend?'
然后你应该写：'Are you going to be with us at the weekend?'

1 ....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....

核对书后的答案。

42 It's George's birthday.

词尾-s的发音

A 词尾的-s（或-es）可以用于四种情况：

- 名词复数: Why have you got three **phones** on your desk?
- 动词: She **phones** him every day.
- 所有格: Have you got **Maria's** phone number?
- Is或has的缩略式: The **phone's** ringing. The **film's** started.

C74a 一个单词词尾加-s（或-es）时，音节个数有时保持不变。听录音。

day I'm staying for a **day**. (1个音节)
days I'm staying for two **days**. (1个音节)

C74b 但有时这个单词的发音会增加一个音节。听录音。

match Have you got a **match**? (1个音节)
matches Have you got any **matches**? (两个音节)

B C75a 听录音，注意左列单词的音节个数。

	音节个数	
go	1	It's time to go.
goes	1	Hit the ball and watch where it goes.
finish	2	When does the course finish?
finishes	3	Do you know when the course finishes?
George	1	Have you met George?
George's	2	It's George's birthday.
train	1	We're waiting for the train.
train's	1	The train's late again.
box	1	Open the box.
boxes	2	Open the boxes.
boss	1	That's the boss.
boss's	2	That's the boss's office.
glove	1	Is this your glove?
gloves	1	Are these your gloves?
page	1	Which is the right page?
pages	2	This book's got 120 pages.

规则是，如果一个单词中最后一个音素是下面这些音素之一，就要增加一个音节/ɪz/：

/s/ /z/ /ʃ/ /ʒ/ /tʃ/ /dʒ/

如果一个单词中最后一个音素是元音或其他辅音，音节个数保持不变。

⚠ 注意：音素/s/ /z/ /ʃ/ /ʒ/ /tʃ/ /dʒ/后的is或has不能用缩略式。听录音。

C75b
The food's good. The service is good.
The game's started. The match has started.

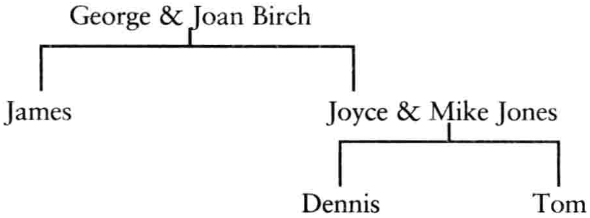
练习

42.1 用动词和名词的正确形式完成下列句子。

1 Let's see who ....finishes.... (finish) these .... (exercise) first.
2 The bar .... (close) when the last customer .... (leave).
3 Don't make .... (promise) you can't keep.
4 Nobody .... (use) a typewriter nowadays, do they?
5 My dad's so tall that when he .... (reach) his hand up he .... (touch) the ceiling.

C76 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

42.2 看家庭关系图，完成下面的句子。



EXAMPLE Joyce ....is.... George ...'s daughter... . → ...Joyce is George's daughter...
1 Joyce and Mike .... Dennis.................. .
2 Tom .... Dennis.................. .
3 James and Joyce .... Mr and Mrs Birch.................. .
4 Dennis .... George.................. .
5 Joyce .... Mike Jones.................. .

C77 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

42.3 看图片，回答下列问题。



完成下列句子。

EXAMPLE Whose is the hat? ....Joyce's....
1 Whose is the camera? ....
2 Whose are the skis? ....
3 Whose is the map? ....
4 Whose is the jacket? ....
5 Whose are the shoes? ....
6 Whose is the suitcase? ....

C78a 听录音并检查你的答案。

EXAMPLE The hat ...'s Joyce's... .
7 The camera ....
8 The jacket ....
9 The shoes ....
10 The skis ....
11 The suitcase ....
12 The map ....

C78b 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

43 I looked everywhere.
动词过去式后缀-ed的发音

A

规则动词的过去式，在词尾加-ed：

look → looked　　explain → explained

如果规则动词原形以字母e结尾，过去式词尾只需加-d：

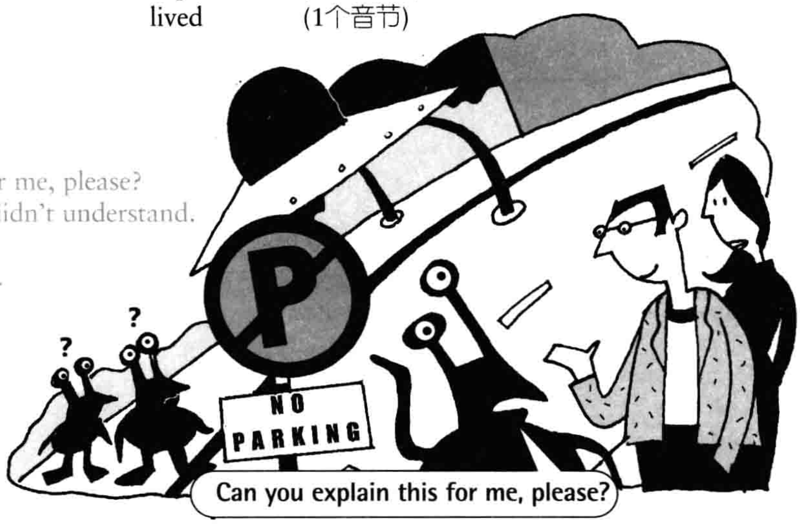
live → lived

一般情况下，动词过去式的音节个数与动词原形相同。

look	(1个音节)	looked	(1个音节)
explain	(两个音节)	explained	(两个音节)
live	(1个音节)	lived	(1个音节)

C79 听录音。

Look at this!
I looked everywhere.
Can you explain this for me, please?
I explained it but they didn't understand.
Where do you live?
We lived in the country.



如果不增加音节，后缀-ed就很难发音，这时你可以想象-ed是在它后面单词的词首。例如，句子I looked everywhere. 可以像下面这样读：

I look teverywhere.
句子I explained it.可以这样读：
I explain dit.

B

然而，如果规则动词原形的词尾音素是/d/或/t/，其过去式后缀-ed或-d就要增加一个音节/ɪd/：

wait → waited
hate → hated

wait	(1个音节)	waited	(两个音节)
hate	(1个音节)	hated	(两个音节)

C80 听录音。

Wait here, please.
We waited half an hour.
I hate waiting.
I hated school.

C81 听力要点

有时，后缀-ed的发音听不清。这种情况会出现在它后面的单词是以辅音音素开头的时候。听录音。

I look(ed) there.
We liv(ed) near the park.

练习

43.1 C82 听录音，在后缀-ed发音清楚的句子后画"✓"，后缀-ed发音不清楚的句子后画"✗"。

1 I watched an interesting film. ☑
2 I watched the news. ☐
3 I walked to the end of the road. ☐
4 The car stopped in the middle of the road. ☐
5 I phoned the police. ☐
6 They helped me a lot. ☐
7 They asked a lot of questions. ☐
8 It rained all day. ☐

核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

43.2 C83 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

1 They *play* / *played* very well.
2 We *clean* / *cleaned* all the rooms.
3 We always *cook* / *cooked* a big meal for the whole family.
4 I *need* / *needed* some help with the housework.
5 I *listen* / *listened* to the radio.
6 I *want* / *wanted* to have a word with you.
7 They *arrive* / *arrived* early in the morning.
8 I never *miss* / *missed* the lesson.

核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

43.3 C84 听录音，用你所听到的动词形式（现在式或过去式）完成句子。

1 We usually ...finished... before the others.
2 You .... my name wrong.
3 I .... a bit of onion to the recipe.
4 I .... those people but they always .... too long.
5 I .... the music in the film.
6 We .... for hours and hours.
7 I .... your house on my way to work.
8 They .... by the sea.

核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

43.4 C85 听下面的小诗。

I wanted to go to the Friday night show.
It started at eight – didn't want to be late.
I walked into town, found the place and sat down.
First in the queue, and nothing to do.
I waited for hours. It rained – a few showers.
A friend passed and asked me, 'Why are you here?
Come down to the pub and we'll have a few beers.'
I remembered just then that Thursday was when
he went for a drink, and I started to think …
Thursday?



再听一遍录音并跟读。按录音中的节奏朗读。

44 Not half past two, half past three

旧信息和新信息的语调

A

D2a 我们会使用不同的语调表达旧信息和新信息。有时我们会用同样的单词重复旧信息，但语调却不同。听录音。

A: What time are we meeting? Did you say half past two?

B: No, not half past two, half past three.

（two是旧信息；three是新信息。）

A: Edinburgh's one of my favourite places in England.

B: But Edinburgh isn't in England, it's in Scotland!

（Edinburgh和England是旧信息；Scotland是新信息。）



B

D2b 有时我们只重复旧信息。听录音。

A: Edinburgh's one of my favourite places in England.

B: But Edinburgh isn't in England!

C

D2c 有时我们用不同的词语重复旧信息。听录音。

A: Look – that wine costs £100!

B: Yes, it's expensive, but everything in this shop's expensive!

（expensive和costs £100是一样的信息。）

D

D2d 有时我们只重复旧信息的一部分。听录音。

A: I thought that film was really good.

B: Well, I thought the music was good.

（music是旧信息film的一部分。）

练习

44.1 D3 听录音，标出粗体词语的语调。

1 A: How about meeting on Tuesday or Thursday at one o'clock?
B: I can come on **Tuesday**, but not before **two** o'clock.
2 A: Let's go to the beach and have a swim.
B: Well, I'll come to the **beach** with you, but I'll probably just do some **sunbathing.**
3 A: Which shop are you talking about? Is it on the corner?
B: Well, it isn't on the **corner**, exactly, but it's very **near** there.
4 A: When I was at school I was good at maths and physics.
B: I was good at **maths**, but my best subject was **music.**

核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

44.2 D4 听录音，标出粗体词语的语调。

1 A: Maybe we could have dinner on Thursday or Friday?
B: Well, I'm free on **Thursday.**
2 A: Let's have a quick drink at the pub and then go somewhere to eat.
B: Well, I've got time to go to the **pub** for half an hour.
3 A: Are the shops open in the evenings and on Sundays?
B: Well, I know they're open in the **evenings.**
4 A: My favourite school subjects were history and geography.
B: Really? I liked **geography** …

核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

44.3 D5 听录音，标出粗体词语的语调。

1 A: It's freezing today!
B: It's pretty **cold,** yes, but it's good weather for walking, so let's **go!**
2 A: Did you go to university in Europe?
B: I didn't **study** there, no, I just travelled **around.**
3 A: Did you come on the ferry?
B: No, I like travelling by **sea,** but it takes too **long.**
4 A: We've got plenty of time – we're leaving at four.
B: That's the **departure** time, yes, but we have to be there by **three.**

核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

44.4 D6 听录音，标出粗体词语的语调。

1 A: Are the shops open at the weekend?
B: I know they're open on **Saturdays.**
2 A: What did you think of the band?
B: The **singer** was good.
3 A: Have you been sightseeing yet?
B: We've been to the **castle** – that's all we had **time** for today.
4 A: Can I have something non-alcoholic?
B: We've got some **orange juice** … or some **mineral water** …

核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

45 And suddenly ...
讲故事的语调

A

D7a 讲故事时，通常用过去进行时介绍背景信息，用一般过去时叙述主要事件。对于这两种不同的时态，常常使用不同的语调模式。听录音，注意前半句和后半句语调的不同。

1 I was walking along the **street** one day, and I saw a **wallet** on the **pavement**.
2 I was waiting for the **bus** yesterday, and I heard an **explosion**.
3 I was lying in **bed** last night, and I heard a knock at the **door**.
4 I was watching the **news** one night, and I saw **myself** in the **shopping** centre.

D7b 听录音并跟读。

street one day – along the street one day – I was walking along the **street** one day
bus yesterday – waiting for the bus yesterday – I was waiting for the **bus** yesterday
bed last night – lying in bed last night – I was lying in **bed** last night
news one night – watching the news one night – I was watching the **news** one night

a wallet – a wallet on the pavement – and I saw a **wallet** on the **pavement**
plosion – an **explosion** – and I heard an **explosion**
the door – a knock at the door – and I heard a knock at the **door**
myself in the **shopping** centre – and I saw **myself** in the **shopping** centre

D7c 听录音，跟录音一起读。

1 I was walking along the **street** one day, and I saw a **wallet** on the **pavement**.
2 I was waiting for the **bus** yesterday, and I heard an **explosion**.
3 I was lying in **bed** last night, and I heard a knock at the **door**.
4 I was watching the **news** one night, and I saw **myself** in the **shopping** centre.

B

D8a 在介绍其他背景信息时，也常常使用 ↘↗ 这样的语调。听录音并跟读。

on Tuesday, I think
as **usual**
and **suddenly**
round about **midnight**

D8b 听录音并跟读，然后跟录音一起读。

1 I was walking along the **street** one day, on **Tuesday**, I think, and I saw a **wallet** on the **pavement**.
2 I was waiting for the **bus** yesterday, as **usual**, and **suddenly** I heard an **explosion**.
3 I was lying in **bed** last night, round about **midnight**, and I heard a knock at the **door**.
4 I was watching the **news** one night, and **suddenly** I saw **myself** in the **shopping** centre.

练习

45.1 D9 听录音，注意语调。

I was doing my **shopping** one day, as **usual**, and I was walking past the **antique** shop, and I saw a beautiful old **vase** in the window, with red and blue and yellow **flowers** on it. And I stood there **looking** at this vase and thinking I'd really like to **buy** it, and I went **in** and **looked** at it and asked about the **price**, but of course it was much too **expensive**. And I did the rest of my **shopping** and went back **home**. And a few days **later** I walked past the same **shop** and noticed that the vase wasn't **there**, and I thought that was the **end** of it. **Anyway**, a couple of weeks **later** it was my **birthday** and I had a little **party** for a few of my **friends**, and they arrived with a huge **parcel** and said, 'Happy **birthday**! We ve got a really special **present** for you!' So I **opened** it and guess **what**, it was the **vase** from the **antique** shop!

45.2 D10 听录音并跟读。

I was doing my **shopping** one day,
as **usual**,
and I was walking past the **antique** shop,
and I saw a beautiful old **vase** in the window,
with red and blue and yellow **flowers** on it.
And I stood there **looking** at this vase
and thinking
I'd really like to **buy** it,
and I went **in**
and **looked** at it
and asked about the **price**,
but of course it was much too **expensive**.
And I did the rest of my **shopping**
and went back **home**.
And a few days **later**
I walked past the same **shop**
and noticed that the vase wasn't **there**,
and I thought that was the **end** of it.
Anyway,
a couple of weeks **later**
it was my **birthday**
and I had a little **party**
for a few of my **friends**,
and they arrived with a huge **parcel** and said,
'Happy **birthday**!
We ve got a really special **present** for you!'
So I **opened** it
and guess **what**,
it was the **vase**
from the **antique** shop!


As usual


I'd really like to buy it.


Much too expensive




A few days later


A couple of weeks later


Happy Birthday!



不要看**练习**45. 1或45. 2的文字，在图片的提示下讲故事。（不需要和原来的故事一模一样！）

46 Really? That's amazing!

做一名好的倾听者

A

D11a 听录音，跟读下列短语——注意语调。

you see
you know
as usual
of course
Well
Anyway
suddenly
then



D11b 听录音，注意短文中标出的语调。故事中重要的新信息的语调通常是：↘

次重要信息或已知信息的语调通常是：↗ 或 ↘↗

I was walking along the street one day, on Tuesday, I think, and I saw a wallet on the pavement. Well, I picked it up and I thought: I'll take it to the police, and I was in a hurry, you see, so I put it in my bag and forgot about it. And I went to work, as usual, and did the shopping, you know, and went home, and then I remembered the wallet. Anyway, I took it out of my bag and had a look inside, and there was some money, and some cards, and tickets and so on, and a photo, and I looked at the photo and suddenly I thought: I know him! It was an old friend from school, you see, and the last time I saw him was years ago. Well, I looked in the wallet and found his phone number and phoned him, and he was pretty surprised, of course, but he remembered me, and we're going to meet tomorrow.

再听一遍录音并跟读。

B

D12a 听录音，跟读下列短语——注意语调。

Oh?
Really?
Was it?
Did you?
Sorry?
What did you say?
Yes.
What did you do?
What happened?
That's great!
That's amazing!
That's terrible!

D12b 这一次，A在讲故事，B在听。听录音，注意B说话时的语调。

A: I was walking along the street one day, on Tuesday, I think, and I saw a wallet on the pavement.
B: Sorry? What did you say?
A: I saw a wallet on the pavement.
B: Oh? What did you do?
A: Well, I picked it up and I thought: I'll take it to the police, and I was in a hurry, you see, so I put it in my bag and forgot about it. And I went to work, as usual, and did the shopping, you know …
B: Yes.
A: … and went home, and then I remembered the wallet. Anyway, I took it out of my bag and had a look inside, and there was some money, and some cards, and tickets and so on, and a photo, and I looked at the photo and suddenly I thought: I know him!
B: Really?
A: It was an old friend from school, you see, and the last time I saw him was years ago.
B: Was it?
A: Yes. Well, I looked in the wallet and found his phone number and phoned him, and he was pretty surprised, of course, but he remembered me, and we're going to meet tomorrow.
B: That's great!

再听一遍录音，跟录音一起读角色B说话的部分。

练习

46.1 用方框中的短句填空。

That's **amazing**! Did you? What **happened**? That's **terrible**! Yes? What did you **do**? **Sorry**?

1 A: I was lying in **bed** last night, round about **midnight**, and I heard a knock at the **door**.
B: **Oh**? ....?
A: **Well**, I went **downstairs** …

2 A: I was waiting for the **bus** yesterday, as **usual**, and **suddenly** I heard an **explosion**.
B: ....?
A: **Yes**, and I thought, What's **that**!?

3 A: I was watching the **news** one night, and **suddenly** I saw **myself** in the **shopping** centre.
B: ....?
A: I said I saw **myself**, on TV!
B: ....!

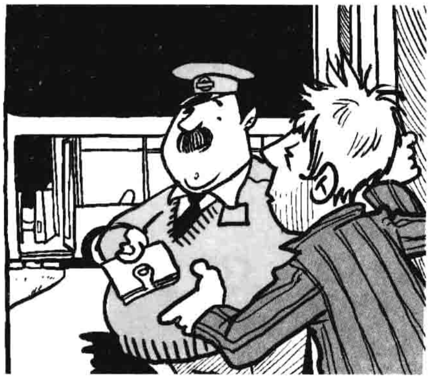
4 A: I left my **wallet** on the bus today!
B: Oh, **no**! ....!

5 A: **Today** was **awful**!
B: **Why**? ....?
A: **Well**, first the **bus** was late, then …

6 A: I was walking by the **river** one day last **week**, down near the **bridge**, you **know**?
B: ....?
A: And I heard a sort of loud **noise** in the **water** …

D13 听录音并检查你的答案。核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

46.2 用第100页角色B说的短句填空。



A: I was lying in **bed** last night, round about **midnight**, and I heard a knock at the **door**.
B: **Oh**? ....?
A: **Yes**, and I thought, 'That's **unusual**.'
B: ....?
A: **Well**, I went **downstairs**, and looked through the **window**, and it was **dark**, of **course**, but I could see a **bus** in the street, with its **lights** off and no **passengers**, and a **man** standing at my door, with a sort of official-looking **cap** on his head.
B: ....?
A: A **cap**, you **know**, like **bus** drivers wear.
B: **Oh**, I **see**. ....?
A: **Well**, I opened the **door**, and he said, 'Mr **Johnson**?', and I said, '**Yes**?' And he said, 'Here's your **wallet**. I finished **work** at **midnight** and I **found** it on my **bus**.' What do you think about **that**?
B: ....!

D14 听录音并检查你的答案。（可以有不同的答案。录音和答案中给出的只是一种可能。）跟录音一起读角色B说的话，然后跟录音一起读角色A说的话。

47 I know **when** it is, but not **where**.

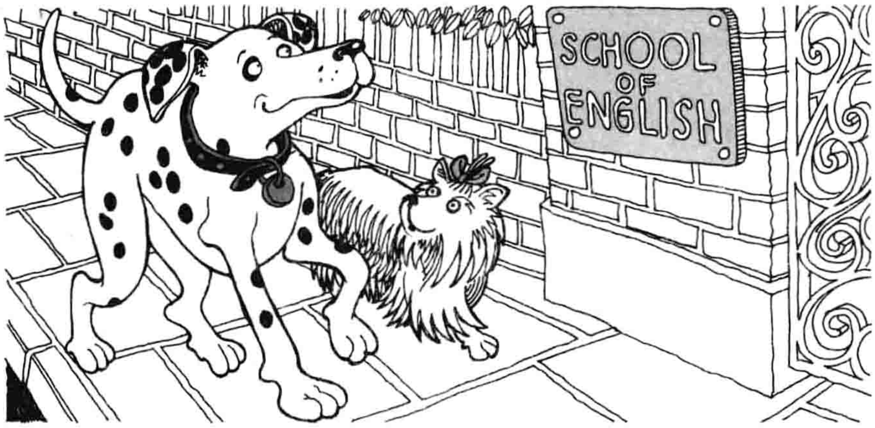
对话中重要的词语 1

A D15 讲话时，我们可以通过重读某些词语凸显其重要性。听下面两段对话，注意粗体词语的重读和语调。

A: How good's your English?
B: Well, I can **speak** English quite well, but I can't **write** it very well.

A: Do you know any foreign languages?
B: Well, I can speak **English**, but that's the **only** foreign language I know.

跟读对话——模仿粗体词语的重读和语调。



How good's your English?

B D16 有时，我们用重读纠正别人所说的话，或使其更加准确。听录音。

A: Is your house number thirty-two?
B: No, it's the next one, number thirty-**four**.

A: Is your house number thirty-two?
B: No, not **thirty**-two, it's number **forty**-two.

跟读对话。



Is your house number 32?

练习

47.1 D17 听录音，每段对话听两遍。听第一遍时，在B角色说的话中两个重读单词下面画线。听第二遍时，标出这些重读单词的语调。

Example （听第一遍） A: Have you got the details of the next meeting?
B: I know it's on Monday, but I don't know what time.

（听第二遍） A: Have you got the details of the next meeting?
B: I know it's on Monday, but I don't know what time.

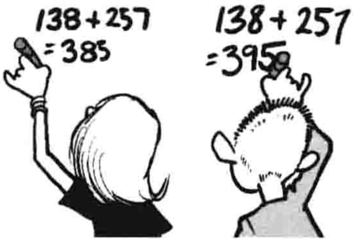

How was the match?

1 A: How was the match?
B: The first half was quite good, but the second half was really good.
2 A: How was the match?
B: The first half was quite good, but the second half was terrible.
3 A: Can I come and discuss this tomorrow?
B: I won't be here tomorrow, but my colleague will be.
4 A: Can I come and discuss this tomorrow?
B: I won't be here tomorrow, but I'll be back on Thursday.
5 A: Have you seen that film? B: I've seen it, but I can't remember much about it.
6 A: Have you seen that film? B: I haven't seen it, but I'd like to.
7 A: Are you having trouble? B: I know what this word means, but I don't know how to pronounce it.
8 A: Are you having trouble? B: I know what this word means, but I don't know any of the others!
9 A: What did you think? B: I liked the film, but I didn't really understand it.
10 A: What did you think? B: I liked the film, but the seats were so uncomfortable!
11 A: I'd like to go to Britain to study for a month or two – or maybe even a year!
B: I'd like to go to Britain for a month, but not for a year.
12 A: I'd like to go to Britain to study for a month or two – or maybe even a year!
B: I'd like to go to Britain, but I'd rather go to America.

核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

47.2 D18 听录音，在每段对话中角色B说的话中重读单词下面画线，可能有一个或多个重读单词。再听一遍录音，标出这些重读单词的语调。

Example A: You're June Smith, aren't you?
B: No, I'm Jane Smith.



What's the answer?

1 A: What's the answer – three hundred and eighty-five?
B: No – three hundred and ninety-five.
2 A: After you. B: No – after you.
3 A: You went to the disco with Steve last night, didn't you?
B: I didn't go with him – I met him there.
4 A: Do you live in London? B: Well, not really in London, just outside.
5 A: You said go over the bridge. B: No, I said go under the bridge.
6 A: Were there really fifty people at your birthday party? B: Well, nearly fifty, I think.
7 A: What's 'Thank you' in Italian? B: I can't speak Italian.
8 A: How many times have you been to England? B: I've never been to England.
9 A: Was the course expensive? B: Well, my school paid for the course, but the travel cost quite a lot.
10 A: How much should I bring – fifty pounds? B: You'll need at least fifty.

核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

48 Finished? I've just started!
对话中重要的词语 2

A

D19a D19b 如果我们想要强调某些词语，比如在非常惊讶的时候，就会特别重读这些词语，并且提高音调。听下面两段对话。

1 A: When will that report be finished?
B: I've just **started** it, so it'll be finished this afternoon.

2 A: Have you finished that report?
B: **Finished**?! I've just **started** it!!

1



2



D19c 在两段对话中，单词started都重读，但在第二段对话中对它进行了特别的强调。听录音并跟读两段对话中的句子I've just started it。

I've just **started** it.
I've just **started** it!!

D19d 在第二段对话中，对单词finished也进行了特别的强调。听录音并跟读。

Finished?!

D19e 听录音，注意单词finished和started语调的不同，然后跟读。

Finished?! **started**!!

D19f 跟读第二段对话中完整的回答。

Finished?! I ve just **started** it!!

B

D20 听录音中两个人的争论。注意他们所使用的语调，尤其是粗体词语的语调。

A: You're late! We said two o'clock!
B: We **didn't** – we said **half** past two!
A: We said **two**! You're **always** late!
B: Last time **you** were late! Remember?
A: Was I?

再听一遍录音并跟读对话。

练习

48.1 D21 听录音，在角色B说的话中特别强调的词语下面画线。再听一遍录音，标出这些重读词语的语调。

EXAMPLE A: Is that your car?
B: **That**? You must be **joking**!

1 A: Do you like westerns?
B: Me? I can't stand westerns!
2 A: It's stopped raining.
B: Really? I don't believe it!
3 A: Is it the first time you've been here?
B: The first – and probably the last!
4 A: You know the city pretty well, don't you?
B: Me? I've never been here before!
5 A: What are twelve elevens?
B: Don't ask me! I'm hopeless with numbers!
6 A: It's two pounds fifty for a cup of coffee.
B: Two fifty? That's ridiculous!
7 A: Were the shops busy today?
B: Busy? They were almost empty!
8 A: Do you like rap music?
B: Like it? I think it's awful!



Is that your car?


Is it the first time you've been here?

核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

48.2 D22 听录音中John Watt和Will Knott之间的电话对话。Watt的发音与what相同，Knott的发音与not相同。Will是William的昵称，发音与will相同。

John Watt: **Hello**. Are you **there**?
Will Knott: **Yes**. Who's **that**?
John Watt: **Watt**.
Will Knott: What's your **name**?
John Watt: **Watt's** my name.
Will Knott: **What**?
John Watt: My name's John **Watt**.
Will Knott: John **what**?
John Watt: **Yes**, that's **right**. Are you **Jones**?
Will Knott: No, I'm **Knott**.
John Watt: Well, tell me your **name**, then.
Will Knott: Will **Knott**.
John Watt: **Why** not?
Will Knott: My name's **Knott**.
John Watt: Not **what**?
Will Knott: Not **Watt**, **Knott**.
John Watt: **What**?!



再听一遍录音并跟读对话，运用和录音中相同的重读和语调，尤其是粗体的词语。

49 No, thanks, I'm just looking.

短语和句子的语调 1

练习

语调变化不定。即使是同样的语句，也不会总能听到相同的语调。但是下面的练习会帮你发现一些最常见的语调模式，请加以练习。在练习第49和50单元之前应先学习44~48单元。

49.1 D23a 听录音，注意语调并跟读。

A: **Ready**?
B: **Nearly**. **Warm**?
A: **No**.
B: **Cold**?
A: **No**.
B: **Raining**?
A: **Slightly**. **Umbrella**?
B: **Thanks**. **Hat**?
A: **Here**.
B: **Thanks**.
A: **Ready**?
B: **Yes**. **You**?
A: **Yes**.
B: **Right**.



D23b 下面这段对话句子更长，但语调不变。听录音并跟读。

A: Are you **ready**?
B: I'm **nearly** ready. Is it **warm**?
A: **No**, not really.
B: Is it **cold**?
A: **No**, not really.
B: Is it **raining**?
A: **Slightly**. Do you want your **umbrella**?
B: Yes, **thanks**. Where s my **hat**?
A: **Here** it is.
B: **Thanks**.
A: Are you **ready**?
B: **Yes**. Are **you** ready?
A: **Yes**.
B: **Right**.

49.2 D24 听录音，标出重读词语的语调 ↘，→或↗。

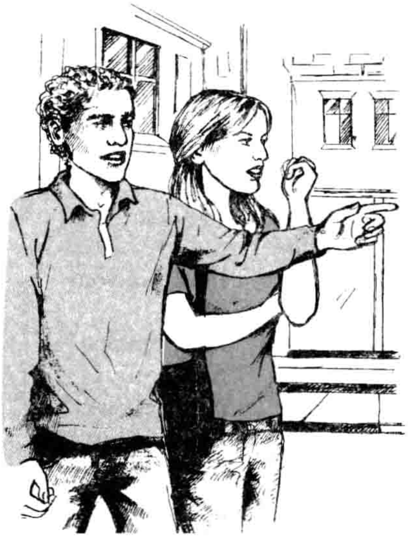
1 A: Can I **help** you?
  B: **No, thanks,** I'm just **looking**.
2 B: I'll take **this, please**.
  A: **Sure**. Anything **else**?
  B: **No, thanks,** that's **all**.
3 A: That's fifteen **forty altogether**.
  B: **Here** you **are**.
4 A: Here's your **change**.
  B: Thank **you**.
5 A: **See** you.
  B: **Bye**.



核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

49.3 D25 听录音，标出重读词语的语调 ↘，↗ 或 ↘↗。

A: Excuse **me**.
B: **Yes**?
A: Can you tell me the way to the **station**, **please**?
B: **Yes**, you just go along this **road**, cross the **bridge** over the **river** and there s a big **park** on your **left**, you **know**? **Well**, you go through the **park** and the **station**'s just on the other **side**.
A: Is it **far**?
B: **No**, not **very** far.
A: **OK**, so I go along this **road**, cross the **bridge** and through the **park** – **right**?
B: That's **right**.
A: Thanks very **much**.
B: You're **welcome**. **Bye**.
A: **Bye**.



核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

49.4 D26 听录音，标出重读词语的语调 ↘，↗ 或 ↘↗。

A: All **right**?
B: **Yes**.
A: Not **nervous**?
B: A **bit**.
A: Don't **worry**. It'll be **fine**.
B: I **hope** so.
A: **Right**. Let's **start**. Are you **ready**?
B: I **think** so.
A: **OK**. The first question **is** … What's your **name**?
B: My **name**? … It's … Jack **Johnson**.
A: That's **right**! Well **done**! **Difficult**?
B: **Well**, not **too** bad.
A: **Right**. The **second** question is … What's 37,548 × 7,726?
B: **What**!



核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读。

50 Fine, thanks.

短语和句子的语调 2

练习

在练习第49和50单元之前应先学习44~48单元。

50.1 D27a 听录音并跟读。

hi	**Hi** there!
hello	
are	How **are** you?
fine	
thanks	**Fine, thanks.**
you	And **you**?
bad	Not too **bad.**
hurry	I'm in a **hurry.**
see you	
bye	

D27b

A: **Hi** there!
B: **Hello!** How **are** you?
A: **Fine, thanks.** And **you**?
B: Not too **bad.** I'm in a **hurry.**
See you.
A: **Bye.**



50.2 D28a 听录音中的语调，将方框中的单词和短语写入正确的一栏。

it was! usually is it? of course! maybe really? I think so did you? definitely sometimes

......it was!......	......usually......	....
....	....	....
....	....	....
	....	

D28b 核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

D28c 听下面的对话录音并跟读。

1 A: Do you think there's life on **Mars**? B: **Maybe.**
2 A: This house is two **hundred** years old. B: **Is** it?
3 A: Can I borrow your **pen**? B: Of **course!**
4 A: Is it hot here in **July**? B: **Usually.**
5 A: That was a good **meal, wasn't** it? B: It **was!**
6 A: My great-grandfather was a famous **artist.** B: **Really?**
7 A: Is this the way to the **beach**? B: I **think** so.
8 A: I found some **money** this **morning.** B: **Did** you?
9 A: Do you think it's going to **rain**? B: **Definitely.**
10 A: Do you read books in **English**? B: **Sometimes.**



Do you think there's life on Mars?

D28d 听录音，用上面方框中的语句进行回答。也可以有不同的答案。

1 Could you **help** me, **please**?
2 Do you go out on Friday **nights**?
3 **Today's** the longest day of the **year.**
4 They show some really good **films** at that **cinema.**
5 Are you going to **Ireland** again this **year**?
6 Do they speak **English** in **Malta**?
7 Can you buy **stamps** in that **shop**?
8 **That** was a long **trip, wasn't** it?
9 Do you have to speak **English** at **work**?
10 I won a prize in the **lottery** last **week.**



50.3 **D29a** 听录音中的语调，将方框中的短句写入正确的一栏。

~~That's great!~~ ~~That's strange.~~ That's fantastic! That's interesting. That's good news! That's kind of you! That's a good idea. That's marvellous!

↗	↘
That's great!	That's strange.

D29b 核对书后的答案，然后听录音并跟读。

D29c 听录音，用上面的短句进行回答。也可以有不同的答案。

1 I've passed my exam!
2 I'm sure I left my glasses here but I can't see them anywhere.
3 I'll help you carry those bags.
4 They've got lots of English books at the new megastore.
5 Let's go for a beer.
6 Look – it's the middle of the afternoon, and all the lights in the house are on.
7 Would you like to come and stay for the weekend?
8 Where's Peggy? She said she was definitely coming.
9 I'm going to Canada for the summer!
10 This road was built by the Romans.

50.4 **D30a** 听录音并跟读。

thanks	**Fine, thanks.**
please	Can I have some **more, please**?
actually	I **like** it, **actually**.
Dave?	Are you **there, Dave**?
if you **like**	Have some **more**, if you **like**.
in **fact**	**Yes, I'can**, in **fact**.
probably	About six o'**clock, probably**.
I'm **afraid**	**No**, I **can't**, I'm **afraid**.
I **think**	About **twenty**, I **think**.
usually	**Coffee, usually**.
when you're **ready**	We can **go**, when you're **ready**.
unfortunately	No, it was **cancelled, unfortunately**.

D30b 听录音并选择上面的语句进行回答。也可以有不同的答案。

1 How are you?
2 How many people are coming to the party?
3 This music's awful, isn't it?
4 Was the concert good?
5 This cake's delicious.
6 What time will you be home?
7 Do you drink tea or coffee for breakfast?
8 Can you come a bit earlier next week?
9 Can you speak Hungarian?
10 How old is she?

E1 Chart of phonemic symbols 音标表

你可以在录音中听到下列单词。

D31a **Short vowels** 短元音

ɪ swim building
e red bread friend any said
æ can map
ʌ son sun
ɒ clock hot
ʊ full book
ə about excellent letter doctor sugar Saturday
i happy

D31b **Long vowels** 长元音

iː tree seat field secret kilo
ɑː can't bar half
ɔː wall talk saw daughter bought warm more door
uː too group blue
ɜː bird work turn learn verb

D31c **Diphthongs** 双元音

ɪə real hear beer here
eə care hair wear where
eɪ came rain say great weight
aɪ time dry high buy
ɔɪ point toy
əʊ cold home slow boat
aʊ now sound

D31d **Consonants** 辅音

b baby job
d do reading add
f foot café off phone
g go bigger bag
h hand who
j yes
k cold talking black
l leave yellow fill
m more summer comb
n now dinner gone know
p pen stopping help
r red sorry write
s sister glass place scissors
t ten better eight washed
v view every five
w well away white
z zero roses scissors jazz
ʃ shop washing cash machine sure national
ʒ television usually
tʃ choose which future
dʒ jeans larger fridge
ŋ thing bank singer
θ thank north
ð then mother with

E2

Guide for speakers of specific languages
各种语言使用者发音指南

如果你的母语为下列语言中的一种，做相应的音素对比练习（见E3）可能对你的发音有所帮助。

Arabic 阿拉伯语
3, 11, 13, 16, 23, 25, 27, 28, 29, 33, 34, 37

Chinese 汉语
1, 4, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 15, 23, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 33, 36, 37

Dravidian languages e.g. Tamil 德拉威语（如：泰米尔语）
1, 4, 7, 11, 12, 13, 17, 23, 24, 26, 27, 28, 31, 34

Dutch 荷兰语
1, 3, 4, 5, 8, 10, 12, 14, 15, 26, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33

Farsi 波斯语
1, 4, 11, 13, 15, 17, 20, 27, 34

French 法语
1, 4, 7, 9, 10, 12, 15, 16, 23, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 33, 37

German 德语
10, 12, 15, 21, 23, 26, 28, 29, 30, 31

Greek 希腊语
1, 2, 4, 7, 9, 11, 12, 13, 15, 17, 31, 32, 33, 34, 37

Italian 意大利语
1, 9, 11, 12, 13, 15, 16, 23, 26, 27, 28, 29, 31

Japanese 日语
9, 12, 20, 25, 30, 32, 34, 35, 36

Korean 韩语/朝鲜语
1, 4, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 17, 23, 24, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 36

Malay / Indonesian 马来语/印度尼西亚语
1, 4, 13, 15, 23, 24, 26, 27, 28, 29, 31, 32, 33

Polish 波兰语
1, 7, 12, 14, 15, 23, 25, 26, 27, 28, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 37

Portuguese 葡萄牙语
1, 4, 7, 9, 13, 15, 23, 25, 26, 27, 28, 30, 31, 34, 35

Russian 俄语
1, 7, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 17, 20, 23, 26, 28, 30, 32, 34, 37

Scandinavian languages 斯堪的纳维亚语言
1, 6, 10, 15, 27, 30, 31

South Asian languages e.g. Hindi, Urdu, Bengali, Gujarati
南亚语言（如：印地语，乌尔都语，孟加拉语，古吉拉特语）
8, 12, 15, 16, 18, 23, 24, 26, 27, 28, 32

Spanish 西班牙语
1, 4, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 17, 20, 23, 26, 27, 28, 33, 34, 35, 37

Swahili 斯瓦西里语
1, 3, 4, 7, 9, 11, 12, 13, 15, 16, 23, 26, 27, 28, 30, 32, 36, 37

Thai 泰语
7, 12, 21, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 30, 31, 36

Turkish 土耳其语
2, 4, 12, 15, 21, 23, 26, 27, 34, 35

West African languages 西非语言
1, 4, 7, 9, 11, 12, 13, 15, 17, 18, 23, 26, 27, 28, 29, 31, 34, 36

E3 Sound pairs 音素对比

如果你在分辨音素方面存在困难，可以在这一节中进行更多的听力练习。听录音中的音素和单词，做练习，然后核对书后的答案。注意Sound pairs（音素对比）这一节的录音在MP3的E文件夹中。

音素对比 1 /iː/ 和 /ɪ/

音素对比 2 /iː/ 和 /ɪə/

音素对比 3 /ɪ/ 和 /e/

音素对比 4 /uː/ 和 /ʊ/

音素对比 5 /ʊ/ 和 /ʌ/

音素对比 6 /uː/ 和 /əʊ/

音素对比 7 /æ/ 和 /ɑː/

音素对比 8 /ɑː/ 和 /ɔː/

音素对比 9 /æ/ 和 /ʌ/

音素对比 10 /ʌ/ 和 /ɒ/

音素对比 11 /ɒ/ 和 /əʊ/

音素对比 12 /əʊ/ 和 /ɔː/

音素对比 13 /ɒ/ 和 /ɔː/

音素对比 14 /ɔː/ 和 /ɜː/

音素对比 15 /e/ 和 /æ/

音素对比 16 /e/ 和 /eɪ/

音素对比 17 /e/ 和 /ɜː/

音素对比 18 /e/ 和 /ʌ/

音素对比 19 /ɜː/ 和 /æ/

音素对比 20 /ɜː/ 和 /ɪə/

音素对比 21 /eə/ 和 /eɪ/

音素对比 22 /aɪ/ 和 /eɪ/

音素对比 23 /p/ 和 /b/

音素对比 24 /p/ 和 /f/

音素对比 25 /t/ 和 /tʃ/

音素对比 26 /t/ 和 /d/

音素对比 27 /t/ 和 /θ/

音素对比 28 /k/ 和 /g/

音素对比 29 /f/ 和 /v/

音素对比 30 /s/ 和 /θ/

音素对比 31 /s/ 和 /z/

音素对比 32 /s/ 和 /ʃ/

音素对比 33 /ʃ/ 和 /tʃ/

音素对比 34 /n/, /ŋ/ 和 /ŋk/

音素对比 35 /m/, /n/ 和 /ŋ/

音素对比 36 /l/ 和 /r/

音素对比 37 /h/ 和 /–/

音素对比 1：/iː/ 和 /ɪ/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第2单元。

E2a 听方框中的单词。

leave – live	feel – fill
field – filled	team – Tim

E2b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** .... **6** .... **7** ....

E2c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *seat / sit*
9 *wheel / will*
10 *eat / it*
11 *cheap / chip*
12 *litre / litter*

音素对比 2：/iː/ 和 /ɪə/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第2和第8单元。

E3a 听方框中的单词。

knee – near	B – beer
D – dear	E – ear

E3b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** .... **6** .... **7** ....

E3c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *cheese / cheers*
9 *knee / near*
10 *we / we're*
11 *D / dear*
12 *he / here*

音素对比 3：/ɪ/ 和 /e/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第2和第6单元。

E4a 听方框中的单词。

sit – set	lift – left
litter – letter	listen – lesson

E4b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** .... **6** .... **7** ....

E4c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *if / F*
9 *six / sex*
10 *in / N*
11 *fill / fell*
12 *disk / desk*

音素对比 4：/uː/ 和 /ʊ/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第3单元。

E5a 听方框中的音素和单词。

/uː/ – /ʊ/	pool – pull
fool – full	Luke – look

E5b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个音素或单词。如果两次听到的是同一个音素或单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的音素或单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... 2 .... 3 .... 4 .... 5 .... 6 .... 7 ....

E5c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 /uː/ / /ʊ/
9 /uː/ / /ʊ/
10 *pool / pull*
11 *pool / pull*
12 *fool / full*

音素对比 5：/ʊ/ 和 /ʌ/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第3和第4单元。

E6a 听方框中的音素和单词。

/ʊ/ – /ʌ/	look – luck
book – buck	

E6b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个音素或单词。如果两次听到的是同一个音素或单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的音素或单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... 2 .... 3 .... 4 .... 5 .... 6 .... 7 ....

E6c 听录音，圈出你所听到的音素或单词。

8 /ʊ/ / /ʌ/
9 /ʊ/ / /ʌ/
10 *look / luck*
11 *look / luck*
12 *book / buck*

音素对比 6：/uː/ 和 /əʊ/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第3和第10单元。

E7a 听方框中的单词。

boot – boat	soup – soap
shoe – show	through – throw

E7b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个音素或单词。如果两次听到的是同一个音素或单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的音素或单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... 2 .... 3 .... 4 .... 5 .... 6 .... 7 ....

E7c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *too / toe*
9 *grew / grow*
10 *blue / blow*
11 *boots / boats*
12 *shoes / shows*

音素对比 7：/æ/ 和 /ɑː/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第4和第6单元。

E8a 听方框中的单词。

had – hard	match – March
pack – park	hat – heart

E8b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... 2 .... 3 .... 4 .... 5 .... 6 .... 7 ....

E8c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *hat / heart*
9 *match / March*
10 *pack / park*
11 *had / hard*
12 *had / hard*

音素对比 8：/ɑː/ 和 /ɔː/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第4和第5单元。

E9a 听方框中的单词。

far – four	are – or
farm – form	star – store

E9b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... 2 .... 3 .... 4 .... 5 .... 6 .... 7 ....

E9c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *far / four*
9 *R / or*
10 *R / or*
11 *part / port*
12 *star / store*

音素对比 9：/æ/ 和 /ʌ/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第4和第6单元。

cat – cut	cap – cup
match – much	ran – run

E10a 听方框中的单词。

E10b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... 2 .... 3 .... 4 .... 5 .... 6 .... 7 ....

E10c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *match / much*
9 *match / much*
10 *ran / run*
11 *sang / sung*
12 *rang / rung*

音素对比 10：/ʌ/ 和 /ɒ/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第4和第5单元。

E11a 听方框中的单词。

E11b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

luck – lock	nut – not
gun – gone	shut – shot

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** .... **6** .... **7** ....

E11c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *lock / luck*
9 *box / bucks*
10 *wrong / rung*
11 *boss / bus*
12 *song / sung*

音素对比 11：/ɒ/ 和 /əʊ/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第5和第10单元。

E12a 听方框中的音素和单词。

E12b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个音素或单词。如果两次听到的是同一个音素或单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的音素或单词，写D（不同）。

/ɒ/ – /əʊ/	not – note
cost – coast	want – won't

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** ....

E12c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

6 *not / note*
7 *cost / coast*
8 *want / won't*

音素对比 12：/əʊ/ 和 /ɔː/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第5和第10单元。

E13a 听方框中的单词。

E13b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

oh – or	coat – caught
woke – walk	so – saw

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** .... **6** .... **7** ....

E13c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *oh / or*
9 *bowl / ball*
10 *coat / caught*
11 *boat / bought*
12 *cold / called*

音素对比 13：/ɒ/ 和 /ɔː/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第5单元。

/ɒ/ – /ɔː/	shot – short
pot – port	spot – sport

E14a 听方框中的音素和单词。

E14b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个音素或单词。如果两次听到的是同一个音素或单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的音素或单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** ....

E14c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

6 *shot / short*
7 *pot / port*
8 *spot / sport*

音素对比 14：/ɔː/ 和 /ɜː/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第5和第7单元。

walk – work	saw – sir
born – burn	short – shirt

E15a 听方框中的单词。

E15b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** .... **6** .... **7** ....

E15c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *walk / work*
9 *born / burn*
10 *short / shirt*
11 *board / bird*
12 *walked / worked*

音素对比 15：/e/ 和 /æ/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第6单元。

men – man	head – had
said – sad	pen – pan

E16a 听方框中的单词。

E16b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** .... **6** .... **7** ....

E16c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *men / man*
9 *said / sad*
10 *met / mat*
11 *set / sat*
12 *bed / bad*

音素对比 16：/e/ 和 /eɪ/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第6和第9单元。

E17a 听方框中的单词。

E17b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

get – gate	pepper – paper
wet – wait	let – late

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** .... **6** .... **7** ....

E17c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *pen / pain*
9 *men / main*
10 *letter / later*
11 *pepper / paper*
12 *edge / age*

音素对比 17：/e/ 和 /ɜː/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第6和第7单元。

E18a 听方框中的单词。

E18b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

head – heard	bed – bird
ten – turn	went – weren't

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** .... **6** .... **7** ....

E18c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *bed / bird*
9 *ten / turn*
10 *went / weren't*
11 *west / worst*
12 *lend / learned*

音素对比 18：/e/ 和 /ʌ/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第4和第6单元。

E19a 听方框中的音素和单词。

E19b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个音素或单词。如果两次听到的是同一个音素或单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的音素或单词，写D（不同）。

/e/ – /ʌ/	better – butter
when – one	again – a gun

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** ....

E19c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

6 *better / butter*
7 *when / one*
8 *net / nut*

音素对比 19：/ɜː/ 和 /æ/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第6和第7单元。

E20a 听方框中的音素和单词。

/ɜː/ – /æ/	hurt – hat
bird – bad	heard – had

E20b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个音素或单词。如果两次听到的是同一个音素或单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的音素或单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** ....

E20c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

6 *hurt / hat*
7 *bird / bad*
8 *heard / had*

音素对比 20：/ɜː/ 和 /ɪə/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第7和第8单元。

E21a 听方框中的音素和单词。

/ɜː/ – /ɪə/	bird – beard
her – here	were – we're

E21b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个音素或单词。如果两次听到的是同一个音素或单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的音素或单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** ....

E21c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

6 *bird / beard*
7 *her / here*
8 *were / we're*

音素对比 21：/eə/ 和 /eɪ/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第8和第9单元。

E22a 听方框中的单词。

wear – way	air – A
stair – stay	hair – hey!

E22b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** .... **6** .... **7** ....

E22c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *stair / stay*
9 *hair / hey!*
10 *there / they*
11 *care / K*
12 *nowhere / no way*

音素对比 22：/aɪ/ 和 /eɪ/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第9单元。

E23a 听方框中的单词。

my – May	why – way
die – day	I – A

E23b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** .... **6** .... **7** ....

E23c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *I / A*
9 *white / wait*
10 *like / lake*
11 *buy / bay*
12 *high / hey!*

音素对比 23：/p/ 和 /b/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第11单元。

E24a 听方框中的单词。

pears – bears	pay – bay
pen – Ben	P – B

E24b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** .... **6** .... **7** ....

E24c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *pay / bay*
9 *pen / Ben*
10 *P / B*
11 *pie / buy*
12 *pack / back*

音素对比 24：/p/ 和 /f/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第11和第14单元。

E25a 听方框中的单词。

pear – fair	pull – full
past – fast	copy – coffee

E25b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** .... **6** .... **7** ....

E25c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *pear / fair*
9 *pull / full*
10 *past / fast*
11 *Pete / feet*
12 *copy / coffee*

音素对比 25：/t/ 和 /tʃ/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第12和第18单元。

E26a 听方框中的单词。

what's – watch	toes – chose
test – chest	coats – coach

E26b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... 2 .... 3 .... 4 .... 5 .... 6 .... 7 ....

E26c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *toes / chose*
9 *coat / coach*
10 *beat / beach*
11 *eat / each*
12 *eats / each*

音素对比 26：/t/ 和 /d/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第12单元。

E27a 听方框中的单词。

try – dry	tie – die
town – down	white – wide

E27b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... 2 .... 3 .... 4 .... 5 .... 6 .... 7 ....

E27c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *writing / riding*
9 *two / do*
10 *T / D*
11 *wrote / road*
12 *set / said*

音素对比 27：/t/ 和 /θ/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第12和第15单元。

E28a 听方框中的单词。

taught – thought	tree – three
boat – both	mats – maths

E28b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... 2 .... 3 .... 4 .... 5 .... 6 .... 7 ....

E28c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *taught / thought*
9 *taught / thought*
10 *tree / three*
11 *boat / both*
12 *mats / maths*

音素对比 28：/k/ 和 /g/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第13单元。

cold – gold	back – bag
class – glass	docks – dogs

E29a 听方框中的单词。

E29b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** .... **6** .... **7** ....

E29c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *cold / gold*
9 *back / bag*
10 *class / glass*
11 *class / glass*
12 *docks / dogs*

音素对比 29：/f/ 和 /v/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第14单元。

few – view	leaf – leave
ferry – very	lift – lived

E30a 听方框中的单词。

E30b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** .... **6** .... **7** ....

E30c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *few / view*
9 *leaf / leave*
10 *ferry / very*
11 *safe / save*
12 *lift / lived*

音素对比 30：/s/ 和 /θ/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第15和第16单元。

sing – thing	sort – thought
sick – thick	mouse – mouth

E31a 听方框中的单词。

E31b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** .... **6** .... **7** ....

E31c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *sing / thing*
9 *sort / thought*
10 *sick / thick*
11 *some / thumb*
12 *mouse / mouth*

音素对比 31：/s/ 和 /z/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第16单元。

E32a 听方框中的单词。

place – plays	Sue – zoo
ice – eyes	rice – rise

E32b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... 2 .... 3 .... 4 .... 5 .... 6 .... 7 ....

E32c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *place / plays*
9 *Sue / zoo*
10 *niece / knees*
11 *piece / peas*
12 *ice / eyes*

音素对比 32：/s/ 和 /ʃ/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第16和第17单元。

E33a 听方框中的单词。

so – show	seat – sheet
sort – short	Sue – shoe

E33b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... 2 .... 3 .... 4 .... 5 .... 6 .... 7 ....

E33c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *so / show*
9 *seat / sheet*
10 *suit / shoot*
11 *save / shave*
12 *sign / shine*

音素对比 33：/ʃ/ 和 /tʃ/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第17和第18单元。

E34a 听方框中的单词。

shoes – choose	ship – chip
cash – catch	wash – watch

E34b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... 2 .... 3 .... 4 .... 5 .... 6 .... 7 ....

E34c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *shoes / choose*
9 *share / chair*
10 *sheep / cheap*
11 *cash / catch*
12 *wash / watch*

音素对比 34：/n/, /ŋ/ 和 /ŋk/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第19单元。

ran – rang	thin – thing
thing – think	sing – sink

E35a 听方框中的单词。

E35b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** .... **6** .... **7** ....

E35c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *ran / rang*
9 *thin / thing*
10 *thing / think*
11 *sing / sink*
12 *sun / sung*

音素对比 35：/m/, /n/ 和 /ŋ/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第19单元。

might – night	me – knee
some – sun	some – sung

E36a 听方框中的单词。

E36b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** .... **6** .... **7** ....

E36c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *might / night*
9 *mice / nice*
10 *mine / nine*
11 *some / sung*
12 *swim / swing*

音素对比 36：/l/ 和 /r/

有关这两个音素的更多内容，见第21和第22单元。

light – right	long – wrong
collect – correct	leader – reader

E37a 听方框中的单词。

E37b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** .... **6** .... **7** ....

E37c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *light / right*
9 *long / wrong*
10 *lock / rock*
11 *collect / correct*
12 *alive / arrive*

音素对比 37：/h/ 和 /–/

有关这个音素的更多内容，见第20单元。

E38a 听方框中的单词。

hey! – A	hear – ear
high – eye	hair – air

E38b 听录音，你将听到方框中的两个单词。如果两次听到的是同一个单词，写S（相同）；如果两次听到的是不同的单词，写D（不同）。

1 .... **2** .... **3** .... **4** .... **5** .... **6** .... **7** ....

E38c 听录音，圈出你所听到的单词。

8 *hey! / A*
9 *heating / eating*
10 *hold / old*
11 *hate / eight*
12 *heart / art*

E4 From spelling to sound 从拼写到音素

D32 a–z 下面是单词中字母或字母组合最常见的发音，但由于有许多特例，还是要经常通过字典查找单词的发音。你可以在录音中听到下列例词。

拼写	音素	例词
a	/æ/	bag
a + 辅音 + e	/eɪ/	late
a	/ə/	about
ai	/eɪ/	train
air	/eə/	hair
ar	/ɑː/	start
ay	/eɪ/	say
au	/ɔː/	taught
aw	/ɔː/	saw
b	/b/	best
c	/k/	car
c + e/i/y	/s/	cent, cinema, cycle
c + 辅音 + e	/s/	nice
ch	/tʃ/	check
ck	/k/	black
d	/d/	do
e	/e/	end
e	/iː/	me
e + 辅音 + e	/iː/	these
e	/ə/	happen
e	/ɪ/	England
ea	/iː/	tea
ea	/e/	bread
ea	/eɪ/	great
ear	/ɪə/	hear
ear	/ɜː/	early
ear	/eə/	wear
ee	/iː/	see
eer	/ɪə/	beer
ei	/eɪ/	eight
ey	/eɪ/	grey
ere	/eə/	where
ew	/juː/	new
f	/f/	fly
g	/g/	get
g	/dʒ/	general
gu	/g/	guess
gu	/gw/	language
h	/h/	hat
i	/ɪ/	him
i + 辅音 + e	/aɪ/	time
ie	/iː/	piece
ie	/aɪ/	pie
ir	/ɜː/	first

拼写	音素	例词
j	/dʒ/	June
k	/k/	key
l	/l/	live
m	/m/	May
n	/n/	no
n + c/k	/ŋ/	uncle, bank
ng	/ŋ/	sing
ng	/ŋg/	single
o	/ɒ/	top
o + 辅音 + e	/əʊ/	nose
oa	/əʊ/	road
oi	/ɔɪ/	point
oo	/uː/	food
oo	/ʊ/	foot
oor	/ɔː/	door
or	/ɔː/	north
ou	/aʊ/	sound
ou	/uː/	group
ou	/ʊ/	could
ough	/ɔː/	thought
ough	/uː/	through
our	/aʊə/	hour
our	/ɔː/	four
ow	/aʊ/	brown
oy	/ɔɪ/	enjoy
p	/p/	pen
ph	/f/	photo
qu	/kw/	quiet
r	/r/	red
s	/s/	say
s	/z/	easy
sh	/ʃ/	shoe
t	/t/	ten
t	/ʃ/	station
t	/tʃ/	picture
tch	/tʃ/	catch
th	/θ/	three
th	/ð/	father
u	/ʌ/	cup
u	/juː/	music
u	/ʊ/	pull
ue	/uː/	blue
ur	/ɜː/	turn
v	/v/	never
w	/w/	well
wh	/w/	white
x	/ks/	six

拼写	音素	例词
y	/j/	you
y	/aɪ/	try
y + 辅音 + e	/aɪ/	type
y	/i/	forty
z	/z/	zoo

Silent letters 不发音的字母

D33 很多英语单词中都有不发音的字母。下面是带有不发音的字母的一些常见的单词。听录音。

不发音的字母	例词
b	climb, comb
d	Wednesday
g	foreign, sign
gh	daughter, eight, high, thought, through
h	hour
k	knee, know
l	could, half, should, walk, would
p	psychology
s	island
t	Christmas, listen, often
w	answer, two, write

E5 The alphabet 英文字母表

练习

E5.1 下面是有关英文字母的练习。

把发音相同的字母和单词连起来。

b	tea
c	pea
i	why
o	bee
p	eye
q	you
r	see
t	are
u	queue
y	oh

核对书后的答案。

E5.2 D34 听录音，圈出不押韵的字母。

1 Which letter doesn't rhyme with a? (哪一个字母和a不押韵？) h j k w
2 Which letter doesn't rhyme with b? (哪一个字母和b不押韵？) c d e g j p t v
3 Which letter doesn't rhyme with u? (哪一个字母和u不押韵？) q w y

核对书后的答案。

E5.3 D35 听录音，写出问题的答案。

1 ......l......
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....
10 ....
11 ....
12 ....

核对书后的答案。

E5.4 D36 听12个单词的拼写，写下这些单词。每个单词读两遍——第一遍语速较快，字母间有连读，像这样：s‿t‿o‿p；第二遍语速较慢，像这样：s…t…o…p。

试着在第一遍听录音时写下单词，第二遍检查。

EXAMPLE ....stop........

1 ....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....
10 ....
11 ....
12 ....

核对书后的答案。

E5.5 大声拼读下列单词。第一遍语速放慢，把每一个音发清楚；第二遍加快语速，字母间要连读。记住，gg应该读做“double g”。

1 where 2 language 3 who 4 quick 5 called 6 enjoy 7 English 8 only
9 saw 10 getting 11 asleep 12 pronunciation

D37 听录音并对比。

E5.6 D38 听下面的故事，然后练习独自朗读。注意每行之间的停顿和粗体单词的重读（见第33单元）。

One day
Leonard **Bern**stein,
the **fam**ous con**duc**tor,
was re**hear**sing with an **or**chestra.
Different **sec**tions of the **mu**sic
are **marked** with the letters **A**, **B**, **C**
and **so** on.
At **one** moment,
Bernstein **stopped** the **or**chestra
and **said**,
'**F wasn**'t very **good**,
G was **bet**ter,
H was **OK**,
and **I** was fan**tas**tic!'
The **whole or**chestra started **laugh**ing –
Bernstein **could**n't understand **why**.



E6 Pronouncing numbers 数字的读法

这一节的讲解和练习（在第134页）将帮助你正确地朗读不同类型的数字。

100　1,000　1,000,000

D39 我们在hundred, thousand, million之前加“a /ə/”。听录音并跟读。

100	a hundred
1,000	a thousand
1,000,000	a million

大于100的数字

D40 读大于100的数字时，我们在最后两位数字前加入弱读的“and /ən/”（美式英语中常常不加）。听录音并跟读。

101	101 (and)	a hundred and one
350	350 (and)	three hundred and fifty
529	529 (and)	five hundred and twenty-nine
2,491	2,491 (and)	two thousand, four hundred and ninety-one
7,512	7,512 (and)	seven thousand, five hundred and twelve
27,403	27,403 (and)	twenty-seven thousand, four hundred and three

年份

D41 年份的读法和数字不同。
数字1764读做one thousand seven hundred and sixty-four，而年份1764读做seventeen sixty-four。
听录音并跟读。

1764	17/64	seventeen sixty-four
1890	18/90	eighteen ninety
1900	1900	nineteen hundred
1907	19/07	nineteen oh seven

但是2000年之后的年份读法和数字一样。

2000	2000	two thousand
2007	2007 (and)	two thousand and seven

电话号码

D42a 电话号码中的数字一个个分开读，而且在每组数字之间停顿。数字0读做oh。听录音并跟读。

01425 365 7098　　oh one four two five, three six five, seven oh nine eight

D42b 对于33和77，应该分别读做double three和double seven。听录音并跟读。

0609 655 400　　oh six oh nine, six double five, four double oh

温度

D43 温度中的0读做zero。听录音并跟读。

14°	fourteen degrees
0°	zero
–12°	minus twelve (degrees) / twelve (degrees) below zero

序数词

D44 听录音并跟读。

1st	first	20th	twentieth
2nd	second	21st	twenty-first
3rd	third	22nd	twenty-second
4th	fourth	23rd	twenty-third
5th	fifth	24th	twenty-fourth
13th	thirteenth	31st	thirty-first
15th	fifteenth	52nd	fifty-second

日期

D45 日期的读法有多种。听录音并跟读。

22 May	May the twenty-second the twenty-second of May May twenty-second（美式英语）
13 January	January the thirteenth the thirteenth of January January thirteenth（美式英语）
30 January	January the thirtieth the thirtieth of January January thirtieth（美式英语）

分数

D46 听录音并跟读。

$\frac{1}{2}$ a half

$\frac{1}{4}$ a quarter
a fourth（美式英语）

$\frac{3}{4}$ three quarters
three fourths（美式英语）

读其他分数，分母依照序数词的读法来读。

$\frac{1}{3}$ a third

$\frac{2}{3}$ two thirds

$\frac{1}{8}$ an eighth

$\frac{5}{8}$ five eighths

小数

D47 在小数中，我们会用到小数点“.”，读做point。听录音并跟读。

1.6	one point six
23.95	twenty-three point nine five
0.762	nought point seven six two zero point seven six two（美式英语）

百分数

D48 听录音并跟读。

1%	one per cent
50%	fifty per cent
67.3%	sixty-seven point three per cent

练习

E6.1 D49 听录音，写下你所听到的数字。

1 ....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....

E6.2 D50 听录音，写下你所听到的年份。

1 ....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....

E6.3 D51 听录音，写下你所听到的电话号码。

1 ....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....

E6.4 D52 听录音，写下你在句子中所听到的数字。

1 ....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....

E7 Pronouncing geographical names 地名的发音

表示国家和地区的形容词通常与其名词形式的发音相似，这样的形容词没有在下表中单独列出。例如：

D53a Austria /ˈɒstriə/ Austria /ˈɒstriən/

但是，一些形容词的发音与其名词形式差异较大，这样的形容词在表中单独列出。例如：

D53b Canada /ˈkænədə/ Canadian /kəˈneɪdiən/

D54a
Africa /ˈæfrɪkə/
America /əˈmerɪkə/
Argentina /ɑːdʒənˈtiːnə/
Asia /ˈeɪʒə/
Atlantic /ətˈlæntɪk/
Australia /ɒsˈtreɪliə/
Austria /ˈɒstriə/

D54b
Belgium /ˈbeldʒəm/
Brazil /brəˈzɪl/

D54c
Canada /ˈkænədə/
Canadian /kəˈneɪdiən/
Caribbean /kærɪˈbiːən/
Chile /ˈtʃɪli/
China /ˈtʃaɪnə/
Croatia /krəʊˈeɪʃə/
Cuba /ˈkjuːbə/
Czech Republic /ˈtʃek rɪˈpʌblɪk/

D54d
Danish /ˈdeɪnɪʃ/
Denmark /ˈdenmɑːk/
Dutch /dʌtʃ/

D54e
Egypt /ˈiːdʒɪpt/
England /ˈɪŋglənd/
Europe /ˈjʊərəp/
European /jʊərəˈpiːən/

D54f
France /frɑːns/
French /frenʃ/

D54g
Germany /ˈdʒɜːməni/
Greece /griːs/
Greek /griːk/

D54h
Holland /ˈhɒlənd/
Hungarian /hʌŋˈgeəriən/
Hungary /ˈhʌŋgəri/

D54i
India /ˈɪndiə/
Iran /ɪˈræn/
Iranian /ɪˈreɪniən/
Iraq /ɪˈræk/
Iraqi /ɪˈræki/
Ireland /ˈaɪələnd/
Irish /ˈaɪrɪʃ/
Israel /ˈɪzreɪəl/
Israeli /ɪzˈreɪəli/

	Italian	/ɪˈtæliən/
	Italy	/ˈɪtəli/
D54j	Japan	/dʒəˈpæn/
	Japanese	/dʒæpəˈniːz/
D54k	Korea	/kəˈriːə/
D54l	Mediterranean	/medɪtəˈreɪniən/
	Mexico	/ˈmeksɪkəʊ/
D54m	Netherlands	/ˈneðələndz/
	New Zealand	/njuː ˈziːlənd/
	Nigeria	/naɪˈdʒɪəriə/
	Norway	/ˈnɔːweɪ/
	Norwegian	/nɔːˈwiːdʒən/
D54n	Pacific	/pəˈsɪfɪk/
	Pakistan	/pækɪˈstɑːn/
	Peru	/pəˈruː/
	Poland	/ˈpəʊlənd/
	Portugal	/ˈpɔːtʃəgəl/
D54o	Romania	/ruːˈmeɪniə/
	Russia	/ˈrʌʃə/
D54p	Saudi Arabia	/ˈsaʊdi əˈreɪbiə/
	Scotland	/ˈskɒtlənd/
	Slovakia	/sləˈvækiə/
	Slovenia	/sləˈviːniə/
	Spain	/speɪn/
	Spanish	/ˈspænɪʃ/
	Sweden	/ˈswiːdən/
	Swiss	/swɪs/
	Switzerland	/ˈswɪtsələnd/
D54q	Turkey	/ˈtɜːki/
D54r	Ukraine	/juːˈkreɪn/
	United Kingdom	/juːˈnaɪtɪd ˈkɪŋdəm/
	United States of America	/juːˈnaɪtɪd steɪts əv əˈmerɪkə/
D54s	Wales	/weɪlz/
	Welsh	/welʃ/

E8 Homophones 同音词

同音词是指拼写不同、含义不同但发音相同的单词。例如：

two /tuː/
too /tuː/

D55 听录音。你将听到五组句子，写下每组句子中的两个同音词。

Example

你会听到：

It's two o'clock. **It's too late.**

你应该写：

two .... too

1 ....

2 ....

3 ....

4 ....

5 ....

6 ....

7 ....

8 ....

9 ....

10 ....

核对书后的答案，然后再听一遍录音并跟读这些句子。

Key 答案

1.1

	字母	音素
1 all	3	2
2 back	4	3
3 could	5	3
4 knee	4	2
5 sixty	5	6
6 thing	5	3
7 who	3	2
8 address	7	5

1.2 1 big 2 dress 3 friend 4 give 5 help 6 next 7 very 8 well

1.3 1 time 2 wash 3 push 4 many

1.4 1 tree 2 shoe 3 what 4 run 5 wait / weight 6 why 7 show 8 near

2.1 1 A: What shall we do this *evening*?
B: Let's stay at home and watch *TV*.
2 A: Let me read that *email*.
B: No – it's a *secret*!
3 A: You know my friend *Steve*?
B: Yes.
A: Well, he's got a new job. He's joined the *police*!

2.2 1 lift 2 minute 3 dictionary 4 window 5 biscuit 6 wings 7 mirror 8 litter

2.3 音素 /iː/: green meet people pizza please repeat tea three
音素 /ɪ/: big busy dinner give in listen office repeat six

2.4 1 d 2 e 3 f 4 b 5 a 6 c
1 We're always busy in the office.
2 Would you like tea or coffee?
3 Give me that big green book, please.
4 There were only three people in the museum.
5 Listen and repeat.
6 Let's meet at six o'clock.

2.5 1 leave 2 near 3 letter

3.1 food June news room school soup spoon Tuesday two

3.2 1 Do you like fast food?
2 Are you coming to school?
3 It's Tuesday the second of June.
4 Let's watch the news.
5 Room two is over there.
6 Here's a spoon for your soup.

3.3 book cookery could good looking sugar

3.4 **1** Do you take sugar?
2 Could you help me? I'm looking for a good cookery book.

3.5

/uː/	/ʊ/
true	foot
toothbrush	good
soon	cook
lose	push
through	pull
	put

3.6 **1** pool **2** luck **3** soap

4.1 含/ɑː/的单词: artist garden March part
含其他元音的单词: square talk warm watch

4.2 含/ʌ/的单词: country fun money mother
含其他元音的单词: business home lots push

4.3 **1** The butter's too hard.
2 I'd love to buy that carpet!
3 Their son's got dark hair.
4 I first met my husband in Prague.

4.4 **1** hat **2** far **3** cut **4** look **5** lock **6** butter

5.1 **1** clock **2** gone **3** want **4** wanted **5** sorry **6** what

5.2 **1** A: What time is it?
B: I don't know. The clock's stopped.
2 A: What have you got?
B: A box of chocolates.
3 A: Where's the doctor?
B: He's gone on holiday.

5.3 **1** thought **2** walked **3** caught **4** taught

5.4 **1** bottle **2** salt (and pepper) **3** box (of shopping) **4** floor
5 dog **6** ball **7** door

5.5 This is our kitchen. On the table there's a big *box* full of shopping, a *bottle* of wine and some *salt* and pepper. There's a *ball* on the *floor* and the *dog*'s asleep in the corner behind the *door*.

5.6 **1** not **2** luck **3** caught **4** short **5** work

6.1 **1** hand **2** best **3** egg **4** man **5** men **6** many **7** have **8** next

6.2 7 10 11 12 17 20 70

6.3 **1** e **2** f **3** d **4** a **5** b **6** c
1 The first plan was the best.
2 He said 'Thank you.'
3 How many stamps do you need?
4 I haven't got any milk.
5 I'll be back again tomorrow.
6 My friends live in a flat over there.

6.4 1 man 2 cut 3 had 4 paper 5 head 6 set 7 butter

7.1 含/ɜː/音的单词:
1 church 3 dirty 5 nurse 7 shirt 9 third
2 curtains 4 girl 6 purse 8 surfer

含/ɔː/音的单词:
1 door 2 floor 3 four 4 horse 5 shorts 6 warm

含/ɑː/音的单词:
1 car 2 large 3 March 4 parked 5 stars

含其他元音的单词:
1 beard 2 chair 3 near 4 pair 5 wearing

7.2
1 The *nurse* is sitting on a *chair* next to the *girl*.
2 The boy's *wearing* a *pair* of *shorts* and a *dirty shirt*.
3 There's a man with a *beard* standing *near* the *door*.
4 The girl's *purse* is on the *floor* next to the bed.
5 It's *warm* in the room.
6 The date is the *third* of *March*.
7 There's a picture of a *surfer*, and a picture of *four horses*.
8 There are flowers on the *curtains*.
9 Through the windows, you can see a *church*, with a *large car parked* outside. There are some *stars* in the sky.

7.3 1 34 2 13 3 1st 4 30 5 3rd 6 21st 7 14 8 37

7.4 1 shirts 2 first 3 beard 4 head

8.1
/ɪə/ 1 Dear 2 really 3 theatre 4 near
/eə/ 1 Mary 2 upstairs 3 there 4 Sarah

8.2
1 She's got *fair hair*.
2 The *chairs* are under the *stairs*.
3 How many *years* have you lived *here*?
4 There's a man with a *beard* sitting in the *square*.
5 Speak up! I can't *hear* you.
6 It's a *clear* day – you can see for miles.

8.3
1 See you next <u>year</u>. /r/
2 <u>We're</u> from England – what about you? 无 /r/
3 Bye – take <u>care</u>! /r/
4 Bye – take <u>care</u>! 无 /r/
5 <u>Where</u> shall we meet? 无 /r/
6 <u>Where</u> shall we meet? /r/

8.5 1 near 2 bird 3 wear

9.1
1 *Waiting* for the *train*
2 *Taking* a *break*
3 *Raining* in *Spain*
4 *Making* a *mistake*
5 *Baking* a *cake*

9.2 1 write 2 try 3 find 4 buy 5 fly

9.3 1 The plane left in the evening and arrived the next morning. It was a *night flight*.
2 It's best to drink *white wine* with fish.
3 Fourteen kilometres is about *eight miles*.
4 There was no rain yesterday. It was a *dry day*.
5 I think I'm lost – is this the *right way* to the beach?
6 We've had a *great time*, thanks. *Bye*!

9.4

/eɪ/	1 radio	2 table	3 cake	4 train	5 plane	6 suitcase
/aɪ/	7 light	8 wine	9 ice			
/ɔɪ/	10 boy	11 coins	12 toys			

9.5 1 gate 2 wear 3 my

10.1 1 gone 2 snow 3 lost 4 some

10.2 It's an *old town* on the *coast*. The *houses* are built with *brown stone*. You can get there by train, *coach* or *boat*. In winter there's a lot of *snow* and sometimes the *road over* the *mountains* is *closed*.

10.4 1 coast 2 boot 3 woke

11.1

1 bill	6 pay	11 butter	16 boots
2 piece	7 but	12 part	17 pool
3 buy	8 pack	13 book	18 beard
4 purse	9 bomb	14 party	19 put
5 black	10 pepper	15 back	20 bought

11.2 1 Can you *help* me *paint* the *bedroom wardrobe*?
2 Brian's *blond*, and he's got a *big beard*.
3 We're going to the *pub*. It's my *brother's birthday*.
4 Where did I *put* my *black boots*?
5 We asked the waiter to *bring* the *bill*, and it was *double* what we expected!

11.3 1 We'll have to change that *bulb*.
2 Looking for a *job*?
3 It isn't on the *map*.
4 Shall we give him a *tip*?
5 Do we have to walk *up* that hill?
6 *Stop* the bus – I want to get off!
7 I *hope* you have a good time!
8 *Help* yourself!

11.4 1 bears 2 pear 3 copies

12.1 1 2001 was the *first* time I went to Britain.
2 I *found* some money in the street.
3 I worked hard *last* week.
4 Do you know a *good* place to eat near here?
5 I live in *West* Road.
6 Is this the *right* house?
7 Do you want some *bread*?
8 Do you like my new *hat*?

12.2 1 wide 2 wrote 3 set 4 said 5 white 6 send 7 road 8 sent

12.3
1 They *send* us emails every day.
2 I *spent* all my money on CDs.
3 When it stopped snowing we went for a walk across the *wide* fields.
4 People *build* houses next to the beach.

12.5 1 watch 2 wide 3 dry 4 writing 5 taught

13.1

1 give	6 cake	11 coffee	16 bigger
2 big	7 kiss	12 again	17 cold
3 get	8 ache	13 walk	18 carry
4 comb	9 guest	14 called	19 work
5 keys	10 back	15 bag	20 grey

13.2
1 Can I *carry* your *bags*?
2 Give me a *big kiss*.
3 You *gave* me *cold coffee again*.
4 A *grey cat* with *green* eyes *walked* into the *garden*.
5 The *guests* would *like eggs* for *breakfast*.

13.3
1 Shall we *walk*?
2 I came by *bike*.
3 When you go out, *take* the *dog*.
4 I'm going to buy a new *desk* tomorrow.
5 A: You don't *take milk* in your tea, do you? B: I do, in *fact*.
6 It's only seven o'clock and it's already *dark*.
7 Listen and *check*.
8 Mark your answer with a *tick*.

13.4 1 back 2 gold

14.1 1 five 2 visit 3 first 4 free 5 leave 6 photo

14.2
1 A *fine view*
2 *Driving* too *fast*
3 *Knives* and *forks*
4 *Five voices*
5 A *few vegetables*
6 The *lift* to the *seventh floor*

14.4 1 few 2 leave 3 coffee

15.1 1 month 2 then 3 thin 4 they 5 with 6 birthday

15.2 含/θ/音的单词: thinking maths bathroom things tooth teeth fourth fifth
含/ð/音的单词: another the those there

15.3
1 The *weather* will be fine for *the* next *three* days. *Then*, on *Thursday*, *there*'ll be some rain in the *north*. The *south* will be dry and sunny, but only about *thirteen* degrees.
2 A: I'm thinking of going to the *theatre* tonight.
B: Me too! Let's *both* go *together*!
3 A: Are you *thirsty*? B: No, *thanks*.
4 A: *These* are my *mother* and *father*, about *thirty* years ago. And *this* is my older brother – he was about *three* years old.
B: And *the* baby – is *that* you? A: Yes, *that*'s me, *with* my *thumb* in my *mouth*!

15.4 1 thing 2 tree

16.1 1 say 2 sat 3 leaves 4 east 5 times 6 glasses

16.2 1 Saturday, Sunday
2 Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday
3 August, September, December

16.3
1	these	/z/	7 dress	/s/
2	size	/s/ /z/	8 it's	/s/
3	style	/s/	9 certainly	/s/
4	please	/z/	10 words	/z/
5	isn't	/z/	11 suits	/s/ /s/
6	pronounce	/s/		

16.4 1 A: Do you like this *dress*? B: The *style suits* you, but *it's* the wrong *size*, *isn't* it?
2 A: Can you *pronounce these words* for me, *please*? B: Yes, *certainly*.

16.6 1 plays 2 zoo 3 so 4 thing

17.1 1 fish 2 station 3 finish 4 shout 5 short 6 dish

17.2 Take your *cash*.
Go to the *shop*.
Buy some *fresh fish* and some *fresh mushrooms*.
Take them home.
Wash them.
Cook them for a *short* time.
Put them in a *dish*.
Eat them.
Shout, '*Delicious*!'

17.3 1 Yes, we're an *international* business. We're based in *Russia*, but we fly to anywhere in *Asia* and the Pacific *Ocean*.
2 A: Why are you *shouting* at that *machine*? B: It's eaten my *cash*!

17.4 1 shoe 2 shoes

18.1 1 watch 2 job 3 chips 4 large 5 juice 6 jazz 7 chair 8 age

18.2 1 get 2 Christmas 3 give 4 picture

18.4 含/tʃ/音的单词: teacher chair chicken cheap Dutch chips cheese
含/dʒ/音的单词: lounge bridge large juice language orange dangerous

18.5 1 orange juice 2 Dutch cheese 3 A cheap chair 4 a language teacher 5 chicken and chips 6 A dangerous bridge 7 a large lounge

18.6 1 watch 2 choose 3 what's 4 coats

19.1 1 moon 2 wrong 3 drink 4 uncle 5 knives 6 comb 7 thing 8 stronger

19.2 含/n/音的单词: knee nose
含/ŋ/音的单词: tongue ring ankle

19.3 1 A warm evening 2 A wrong answer 3 My hungry uncle 4 A single room 5 Nine languages

19.4 1 The woman's *listening* to the radio and *reading*.
2 The phone's *ringing*.
3 The cat's *drinking*.
4 It's *snowing*.

19.5 1 rang 2 think 3 night 4 sung 5 some

20.1 1 hat 2 how 3 home 4 half 5 high / hi 6 who

20.2 A: Excuse me, can you tell me *how* to get to the castle?
B: Yes. Go past the *hotel* and the *hospital*, then there's a road *behind* those *houses*.
You go up a *hill*, and the castle's at the top.
A: Thanks for your *help*!

20.3 1 A helping hand 2 A happy holiday 3 How many hours? 4 History, perhaps? 5 Half a house 6 How did it happen? 7 Hi! Who's at home?

20.4 1 ear 2 high

21.1 1 late 2 light 3 large 4 cold 5 table 6 apple 7 learning 8 below

21.2
1 Did you say the *letter* box or the *litter* bin?
2 *Hello*. My name's L. I'm the twelfth *letter* of the *alphabet*.
3 There's an *apple* in the *middle* of the *table*.
4 Would you like a *single* room or a *double*?
5 What's in that *little bottle*?

21.3
My bus was *late*.
I *lost* my wallet.
I *fell* off a ladder.
I caught a *cold*.
I *fell asleep* at work.
That's *life*!

21.4 1 light 2 correct

22.1
1 Hey, look! I found these old *rock records* in a *rubbish* bin!
2 *Rain* again – what *terrible* weather!
3 Are you *really* sure this is the *right address*?
4 Stop *running round* the *room*! We've got to get *ready* to go out.
5 A: Oh, no, I've lost an *earring*. B: I'm *afraid* Anna *borrowed* it.
6 A: *Hurry* up! B: Why? It isn't a *race*. A: We're *already* late! B: Don't *worry*, they'll wait till we *arrive*.

22.2 下画线=发/r/音
1 A: Where did you park the car? B: I'm not sure. I think it was just around the corner.
2 A: Have you ever heard of square oranges? B: No, never!
3 A: Can you play the guitar? B: I can play the guitar and sing.
4 A: Are we far away from the road? B: Well, it's rather hard to say …

22.3 1 right 2 long 3 correct

23.1 1 news 2 few 3 yet 4 weekend 5 tunes 6 when 7 music 8 west 9 yellow 10 year

23.2
1 A: *When*'s your interview?
B: It's on *Wednesday*, at *quarter* past one.
A: Good luck!
2 A: Are you going *away* for the *weekend*?
B: *Yes*.
A: *Where*?
B: I don't know *yet*.

3 A: Hi! *Where* are you?
B: We're in *west* Wales.
A: What's the *weather* like?
B: *Yesterday* was *wet* and *windy*, but today's beautiful.
4 A: Can you read *music*?
B: No, but I remember a *few tunes* from when I was *young*.

23.3

What?	A wallet.
What colour?	Yellow.
With?	Money, keys, cards – the usual things.
Where?	In the town square.
When?	Yesterday.
What time?	Twelve.
Who?	Two young men.
What happened?	I was waiting in a queue. They were quick. They ran away.

24.1 1 Tuesday 2 fifty 3 expensive 4 centimetre 5 pencil 6 December 7 September 8 bedroom 9 October 10 exam

24.2 1 mountains 2 reception 3 accident 4 postcard 5 sunglasses, umbrella

24.3 1 A: How's your English?
B: I think I need to practise more – I have problems with making sentences, and tenses, and pronunciation, and listening, and answering questions, and conversation, and I make too many mistakes …
A: Don't worry, it's not so bad! You're almost an expert!
2 A: Where's my passport?
B: I don't know. In your suitcase, maybe?
A: Where's my suitcase?
B: Upstairs, in the wardrobe.
A: Right. And where's the envelope that was on the kitchen table?
B: In the wastepaper basket – was it important?

25.1
1 Is that your *dress*?
2 Is it going to *rain*?
3 A few *miles*.
4 I went to a *cool* party.
5 Are you *asleep*?
6 Are you going by *train*?
7 Is that your *address*?
8 How did you *sleep*?
9 A few *smiles*.
10 I went to a *school* party.
11 Is he your *twin*?
12 Is he going to *win*?

25.2 也可能是别的顺序。
1 pay, play, plane, plate, rain, train, late, paint, eight
2 see/sea, tea, feet, seat, three, free, tree, street, eat
3 so, low, no/know, slow, soap, slope, nose/knows
4 lie, fight, right, light, flight

25.3 1 plane 2 blue 3 drink 4 twelfth 5 free 6 o'clock 7 speak 8 floor

26.1 1 cold 2 colder 3 dancer 4 dance 5 older 6 old 7 centre 8 centre 9 fast 10 faster

26.2
1 Yesterday was *cold*, but today's *colder*.
2 My wife's a good *dancer* but I can't *dance* at all.
3 I'm *older* than you, but not too *old* to learn English.
4 I *sent* my daughter to buy some things in the shopping *centre*.
5 The bus is *fast* but the train's *faster*.

26.3
1 A: Have you seen that film? B: No, I haven't.
2 A: Be there at six. B: Is that when it starts?
3 A: Have you been to France? B: Yes, once.
4 A: How do you say 'Hello' in French? B: I can't speak French.
5 A: Have some of these biscuits. B: No, thanks, I don't like them.
6 A: I found some money in the street today. B: How much? A: Fifty pence.
7 A: What's for lunch? B: Fish and chips.
8 A: I only slept six hours last night. B: I didn't sleep at all!
9 A: What colour are your new gloves? B: Pink and orange!

26.4 1 physics 2 isn't 3 thousands 4 boots 5 banks 6 silence 7 west

27.1
1 See you *next* week.
2 Have a *good* time.
3 Have a *great* holiday.
4 *Give* me a call.
5 *Send* me an email.
6 *Tell* me how you are.
7 *Write* me a letter.
8 *Bring* me a present.

27.2
1 It's really warm today.
2 Try this sentence.
3 I don't know what to do.
4 Look through all the photos.
5 Check the answer.
6 I'd like to ask you something.
7 Is this the right place?
8 I haven't listened to this CD yet.
9 The meeting's on Monday.
10 The potatoes aren't cooked yet.

27.3 也可能是别的顺序。

this month	next month	last month
a big town	an old town	a small town
a young cat	a white cat	a big cat
a black cat	an old cat	a small cat
cheap clothes	white clothes	big clothes
black clothes	old clothes	small clothes

28.1
1 eyes 1
2 why 1
3 white 1
4 write 1
5 writing 2
6 glass 1
7 glasses 2
8 university 5
9 business 2
10 information 4

28.2 1 Saturday 2 Two 3 Eleven, seventeen 4 W ('double u') 5 March, May, June

28.3 I remember(3) once on my first visit(2) to England(2), soon after(2) I started(2) learning(2) English(2), my landlady(3) went shopping(2) and she came back with a big bag full of things, but she forgot(2) to buy some soup – she needed(2) a tin of tomato(3) soup. So I said, 'I'll go to the shop and buy it for you,' because(2) I wanted(2) to be helpful(2) and it was a chance to practise(2) my English(2) a bit. So I went to the little(2) shop round the corner(2) and asked the shopkeeper(3) for tomato(3) soup. But he seemed surprised(2), he didn't(2) understand(3), and I repeated(3) again(2) and again(2) 'soup, tomato(3) soup' until(2) he gave me some red soap, and I realised(2) I'd confused(2) 'soup' and 'soap' and I was asking(2) for 'tomato(3) soap'. I felt terrible(3), I wanted(2) to run out of the shop, but my landlady(3) wanted(2) her soup, so I said, 'Thank you. And tomato(3) soup, please' – this time with the correct(2) pronunciation – and he gave me the soup. I paid and went back to the house and said to the landlady(3), pronouncing(3) very(2) carefully(3), 'Here's your soup, and I bought you this soap as a present(2),' and she said, 'Ooh, thank you very much, that's very(2) nice of you!'

29.1
1 Britain
2 today
3 America
4 police
5 another
6 again
7 mountain

1 Great Britain
2 arriving today
3 going to America
4 call the police
5 have another
6 say it again
7 climb the mountain

29.2
Where's the waiter? – Can you wait a minute?
Not at all. – You'll see a tall building on your left.
Look in the cellar. – I'm trying to sell a house.
It takes a long time. – Walk along the beach.
Smoking isn't allowed. – I heard a loud noise.
I'd like to live in a newer house. – My father knew a lot about music.

29.3
1 America
2 sentence
3 different
4 mountain
5 today
6 letter
7 police
8 again

30.1 1 afraid 2 better 3 police 4 correct 5 enjoy

30.2
重音在第一个音节的单词: longer turning sleeping
重音在第二个音节的单词: asleep along return

30.3
OooOo 1 teacher or student?
2 reading or writing?
OoooO 1 single or return?
2 finish or begin?
oOoOo 1 the same or different?
2 perhaps or maybe?
oOooO 1 asleep or awake?
2 behind or in front?

30.4
1 /ˈsɪstə/ sister
2 /rɪˈlæks/ relax
3 /ˈpiːpl/ people
4 /ˈfɪnɪʃ/ finish
5 /kəmˈpliːt/ complete
6 /ˈteɪbl/ table
7 /prəˈnaʊns/ pronounce

31.1
1 interview
2 museum
3 magazine
4 definitely
5 American
6 politician
7 nationality
8 photography

31.2

Ooo	oOo
adjective	eleven
alphabet	important
cinema	reception
furniture	remember
grandmother	tomorrow

31.3
1 We had a *delicious* meal on *Saturday*.
2 We *normally* go on *holiday* by car, but this time we're going by *bicycle*.
3 I did ten grammar *exercises yesterday*.
4 Is *Switzerland* an *expensive* country?
5 My son's *seventeen* and my father's *seventy*.
6 I had a long *telephone conversation* this *afternoon*.

31.4
Oooo January February
oOo September October November December

32.1 1 half-price 2 second class 3 mobile phone 4 city centre

32.2 earrings wine bar handbag birthday present boyfriend
A: Oh no, I can't find my earrings!
B: Have you looked in your handbag?
A: Of course!
B: Maybe you left them in that wine bar last night?
A: Oh no, maybe I did!
B: Are they important?
A: Yes – they were a birthday present from my boyfriend!

Checklist
Have I ...
... set the alarm clock?
... and put it on the bedside table?
... put my plane ticket in my trouser pocket?
... packed my toothbrush?
... put my suitcase by the bedroom door?
... switched the CD player off?
... phoned the taxi driver to say 'Be here at six'?
Have I ...
Have I ...
... Where's my checklist?!

33.1 A few years ago / I read in a newspaper / that the staff at a library / in a small town in the west of England / had noticed / that the number of visitors to the library / was going down and down, / and the number of books they were borrowing / was going down even faster. / They couldn't understand this, / so they decided to do some research / to find out the reason. / They interviewed people / and asked them to fill in questionnaires / and so on. / And guess what they discovered. / The reason was / simply / that everybody had read all the books already!

A few years ago / I read in a newspaper / that the staff at a library / in a small town in the west of England / had noticed / that the number of visitors to the library / was going down and down, / and the number of books they were borrowing / was going down even faster. / They couldn't understand this, / so they decided to do some research / to find out the reason. / They interviewed people / and asked them to fill in questionnaires / and so on. / And guess what they discovered. / The reason was / simply / that everybody had read all the books already!

33.2 This seems unbelievable / but it's a true story / in fact. A farmer / was working in the fields / with his tractor. / The tractor crashed / and he fell out / and landed on the ground / unconscious. / As he fell, / his mobile phone / fell out of his pocket. / Soon after, / a bird that was flying around the fields / saw the phone / and started pecking it / with its beak. / Amazingly / it dialled the number 999 / and soon the emergency services arrived / to help the farmer.

This seems unbelievable / but it's a true story / in fact. A farmer / was working in the fields / with his tractor. / The tractor crashed / and he fell out / and landed on the ground / unconscious. / As he fell, / his mobile phone / fell out of his pocket. / Soon after, / a bird that was flying around the fields / saw the phone / and started pecking it / with its beak. / Amazingly / it dialled the number 999 / and soon the emergency services arrived / to help the farmer.

34.1
1 Choose the correct‿answer and tick‿it.
2 Which page‿is‿it‿on?
3 How do you spell‿it?
4 How do you pronounce‿it?
5 What does‿it mean?
6 I can't‿understand this.
7 Look‿it‿up‿in your dictionary.
8 It‿isn't‿easy to speak‿English.
9 Listen – which language‿is that?
10 Don't worry if you make‿a mistake.

34.2
1 A: What do you think of yoga? B: I don't know, I've never *tried*‿it.
2 A: What happened to my favourite cup? B: It *fell*‿off the table.
3 A: Which film shall we go to? B: I don't mind. I've *seen*‿all of them before.
4 A: You look pleased. B: Yes, I've *found*‿a new job.
5 A: What did you do last night? B: I just *stayed*‿at home.
6 A: Where did you buy that hat? B: I *made*‿it myself!
7 A: Does your dog like biscuits? B: I don't know, I've never *asked*‿it.
8 A: How did you get here? B: I *swam*‿across the river.

34.3
1 Where are you going?
2 Where shall we go?
3 Where did I put my scissors?
4 I don't know where I put my scissors.
5 Have another biscuit.
6 Have another apple.
7 They're all coming with us.
8 They're coming with us.
9 Are you sure?
10 Are you sure about that?

35.1
1 A: *Do you‿[w]often* go swimming? B: Not really, I‿[j]*only go‿[w]once* or twice a month.
2 A: What's *the‿[j]eighth* letter in the‿[j]alphabet? B: Maybe‿[j]it's G‿[j]or H *or I‿[j]or J*?
3 A: When do you *go‿[w]on* holiday? B: We‿[j]*usually go‿[w]in* July‿[j]or August.
4 A: What's your *new‿[w]address*? B: Twenty‿-[j]eight, Sea‿[j]Avenue.
5 A: Try *to‿[w]answer* soon. B: OK, I'll send you my‿[j]answer *by‿[j]email*.
6 A: Look! There's *snow‿[w]on* the mountains. B: Really? I can't *see‿[j]anything*.

35.2 1 Is it blue‿^{w}or grey?
2 What day‿^{j}is it today? Thursday‿^{j}or Friday?
3 Coffee‿^{j}or tea?
4 Where's my‿^{j}interview suit?
5 Play‿^{j}a song for me.
6 Hello. Reception? Which city‿^{j}is this?
7 See you‿^{w}in the‿^{j}evening.
8 Why do we‿^{j}always have to get up so‿^{w}early?

35.3 1 A: Are you the new‿^{w}assistant? B: Yes, I‿^{j}*am*.
2 A: Is he‿^{j}in the same class as you? B: No, he‿^{j}*isn't*.
3 A: Am I late? B: No, you‿^{w}*aren't*. Come in.
4 A: Is she coming with us? B: Yes, she‿^{j}*is*.
5 A: These chairs aren't very comfortable, are they? B: No, they‿^{j}*aren't*.

36.1 1 OoOo
What's the matter?
see you later
tell the others
feeling better
come for dinner
round the corner
go and find it
What's the problem?
one pound forty
half a kilo
sixty-seven
breakfast's ready

2 OooO
What shall we do?
stand in the queue
What about you?
nothing to do
Anyone there?
ready to go
on the TV
two and a half
asking for more
now and again
leave it to me
quarter to four

36.2 Pass me the *jam*, Pam
Wait in the queue, Sue
See you *again*, Jen
Leave it to me, Lee
What would you *like*, Mike?
When shall we meet, Pete?
Over the *hill*, Bill
Where have you gone, John?
Soon as you *can*, Van
Almost forgot, Scott
Lend me your *pen*, Ben
Where shall we go, Flo?
Get a new *job*, Bob
How do you feel, Neil?
What have you *got*, Dot?

36.3 Take me to the *show*, Jo
Thank you for the food, Jude
See you in the *park*, Mark
Really like the hat, Pat
See you on the *train*, Jane
When will you be back, Jack?
Always on the *phone*, Joan
When did you arrive, Clive?
Have a glass of *juice*, Bruce.

37.1

1 A: Are you (w) going to talk to him (w)? B: No, I think he (s) should talk to me (s) first.
2 A: Shall I phone her (w)? B: Yes, I (w) think you (w) should.
3 A: You (w) see those people over there? Do you (w) know them (w)? B: I know her (s), but I don't know him (s).
4 A: What are you (w) going to give him (w)? B: I think I'll give him (w) a shirt. What about you (s)?
5 Let him (w) come in and ask him (w) what he (w) wants.
6 She (w) says she'll (w) bring her (w) money tomorrow.
7 I'm tired ... shall we (w) go now?
8 Everybody's leaving. What about us (s)? Shall we (s) go, too?
9 Tell us (w) when you're (w) ready.
10 A: Who broke that window? B: He (s) did! C: No, I didn't, she (s) did!

37.2

1 What *do you* think about it?
2 Where *shall we go* tonight?
3 *He's* ready *for you* now.
4 Where *is he*?
5 *Tell them to* come in.
6 *Are you* feeling all right?
7 Tell *me the news*.
8 *I know her* phone number but not *her address*.

38.1

1 They went out and (w) left their (w) children at (w) home.
2 Don't sit there – that's his (s) seat.
3 Is this the train to (s) London or from (s) London?
4 I didn't say at (s) five o'clock, I said about five o'clock.
5 What are (w) you going to (w) do?
6 His (w) first name's Jack, but I don't know his (w) second name.
7 Would you like some (w) more tea?
8 Bring your (w) umbrella – it's going to (w) rain.
9 Excuse me – is this your (s) umbrella?
10 Can you go and (w) buy some (w) bread and (w) milk, please?
11 You've bought some (w) flowers – who are they for (s)?
12 I bought them (w) for (w) you (s)!

39.1

有错误的部分录音原文如下：
There are four people in the car.
There's a woman sitting in the house.
There are some children walking along the road.
There are no clouds in the sky.
There's another house on the right.

39.2

There's a cat on the mat.
There's a fish in a dish.
There's a dog in the fog,
and a mouse in the house.
There's a film on TV.
You can sit on my knee.
There are two cups of tea.
One for you, one for me.

39.3 1 Tessa's taller *than* Terry, but she isn't *as tall as* Ted.
Ted's *older than* Tessa, but he isn't *as* old *as* Terry.
2 A: What's the longest tunnel in the world?
B: The Channel Tunnel, between England and France?
A: No, *there's* a *longer* one *than* that.
B: Is *there,* really?
A: Yes, *there* is, in Japan.
3 A: How many dollars are *there* in a pound?
B: I think *there are* about one and a half ... or maybe *there are* one and a half pounds in a dollar?

39.4 A: What are(w) you(w) doing there(s)?
B: There(w)'s a(w) spider in the room.
A: Is there(w)? Where?
B: There(s), look!
A: No, there(w) isn't!
B: Yes, there(w) is!
A: Well, actually, there(w) are(w) two – one there(s) and(w) one there(s)!

40.2 A: I'm (w) better than you!
B: No, you aren't!
A: I am (s). I've (w) got more toys than you!
B: No, you haven't!
A: Yes, I have (s)! And I can (w) speak twenty languages!
B: You can't! Nobody can (w) speak twenty languages!
A: I can (s). And I could (w) walk when I was (w) three weeks old!
B: You couldn't! That's impossible!
A: I could (s)! You don't know – you weren't there!
B: I was (s)! I'm older than you!
A: No, you aren't!
B: Yes, I am (s)! I'm (w) eight. How old are (w) you?
A: I'm (w) eight hundred.
B: What do (w) you mean? Nobody can (w) be eight hundred years old!
A: Don't argue!
B: I'm (w) not arguing!
A: Yes, you are (s)!

40.3 1 I could (w) speak English when I was (w) twelve.
2 I wasn't very well yesterday, but I am (s) today.
3 A: Are (w) these your gloves? B: Yes, they are (s). Thanks!
4 A: I don't think you were (w) at the lesson last week, were (s) you? B: I was (s)!
5 A: I didn't think the singers in the band were (w) very good. B: Oh, I thought they were (s)!
6 A: Have (w) you got a pen? B: Just a minute, I think I have (s), somewhere.
7 A: Has (w) the lesson started? B: Yes, it has (s), but you can (w) go in.
8 A: Where does (w) he live? B: Near the old town hall. Do (w) you know where that is? A: Yes, I do (s).

41.1 1 A: Why haven't you done the shopping? B: I *have* done the shopping. *It's* on the kitchen table.
2 A: The *weather's* better than last year, isn't it? B: It certainly *is*.
3 A: Right then, *I'm* going. Are you coming with us? B: No, *I'll* see you later.
4 A: *What's* the time? B: *It's* twenty to seven.
5 A: They aren't ready yet. B: *We are* ready!
6 A: *I'd* love to go somewhere warm for a change. B: I *would*, too!
7 A: *I'm* afraid they *haven't* arrived yet. B: *They have. They're* here now!
8 A: *Let's* go. B: I don't think the *concert's* finished yet, has it? A: *It has*, actually.

41.2 1 What do you want to do tomorrow?
2 We'll just have to wait and see.
3 I was late because there was a lot of traffic.
4 Bring them all to the party.
5 I haven't seen him for ages.

42.1 1 Let's see who *finishes* these *exercises* first.
2 The bar *closes* when the last customer *leaves*.
3 Don't make *promises* you can't keep.
4 Nobody *uses* a typewriter nowadays, do they?
5 My dad's so tall that when he *reaches* his hand up he *touches* the ceiling.

42.2 1 Joyce and Mike *are* Dennis*'s parents*. / Joyce and Mike *are* Dennis*'s mother and father*.
2 Tom *is* Dennis*'s brother*.
3 James and Joyce *are* Mr and Mrs Birch*'s children*. / James and Joyce *are* Mr and Mrs Birch*'s son and daughter*.
4 Dennis *is* George*'s grandson*.
5 Joyce *is* Mike Jones*'s wife*.

42.3 1 Charles's
2 Rose's
3 Charles's
4 George's
5 Jez's
6 Jez's
7 The camera's *Charles's*.
8 The jacket's *George's*.
9 The shoes are *Jez's*.
10 The skis are *Rose's*.
11 The suitcase is *Jez's*.
12 The map's *Charles's*.

43.1 1 I watched an interesting film. ✓
2 I watched the news. ✗
3 I walked to the end of the road. ✗
4 The car stopped in the middle of the road. ✓
5 I phoned the police. ✗
6 They helped me a lot. ✗
7 They asked a lot of questions. ✓
8 It rained all day. ✓

43.2 1 They *played* very well.
2 We *cleaned* all the rooms.
3 We always *cook* a big meal for the whole family.
4 I *need* some help with the housework.
5 I *listened* to the radio.
6 I *wanted* to have a word with you.
7 They *arrive* early in the morning.
8 I never *missed* the lesson.

43.3 1 We usually *finished* before the others.
2 You *pronounce* my name wrong.
3 I *added* a bit of onion to the recipe.
4 I *like* those people but they always *stay* too long.
5 I *loved* the music in the film.
6 We *talked* for hours and hours.
7 I *pass* your house on my way to work.
8 They *lived* by the sea.

44.1 1 A: How about meeting on Tuesday or Thursday at one o'clock?
B: I can come on **Tuesday**, but not before **two** o'clock.
2 A: Let's go to the beach and have a swim.
B: Well, I'll come to the **beach** with you, but I'll probably just do some **sunbathing**.
3 A: Which shop are you talking about? Is it on the corner?
B: Well, it isn't on the **corner**, exactly, but it's very **near** there.
4 A: When I was at school I was good at maths and physics.
B: I was good at **maths**, but my best subject was **music**.

44.2 1 A: Maybe we could have dinner on Thursday or Friday?
B: Well, I'm free on **Thursday**.
2 A: Let's have a quick drink at the pub and then go somewhere to eat.
B: Well, I've got time to go to the **pub** for half an hour.
3 A: Are the shops open in the evenings and on Sundays?
B: Well, I know they're open in the **evenings**.
4 A: My favourite school subjects were history and geography.
B: Really? I liked **geography** …

44.3 1 A: It's freezing today!
B: It's pretty **cold**, yes, but it's good weather for walking, so let's **go**!
2 A: Did you go to university in Europe?
B: I didn't **study** there, no, I just travelled **around**.
3 A: Did you come on the ferry?
B: No, I like travelling by **sea**, but it takes too **long**.
4 A: We've got plenty of time – we're leaving at four.
B: That's the **departure** time, yes, but we have to be there by **three**.

44.4 1 A: Are the shops open at the weekend?
B: I know they're open on **Saturdays**.
2 A: What did you think of the band?
B: The **singer** was good.
3 A: Have you been sightseeing yet?
B: We've been to the **castle** – that's all we had **time** for today.
4 A: Can I have something non-alcoholic?
B: We've got some **orange juice** … or some **mineral water** …

第45单元无答案。

46.1 1 A: I was lying in **bed** last night, round about **midnight**, and I heard a knock at the **door**.
B: **Oh**? *What did you **do***?
A: **Well**, I went **downstairs** …
2 A: I was waiting for the **bus** yesterday, as **usual**, and **suddenly** I heard an **explosion**.
B: ***Did** you*?
A: **Yes**, and I thought What's **that**!?
3 A: I was watching the **news** one night, and **suddenly** I saw **myself** in the **shopping** centre.
B: ***Sorry***?
A: I said I saw **myself**, on **TV**!
B: *That's **amazing***!
4 A: I left my **wallet** on the bus today!
B: Oh, **no**! *That's **terrible***!
5 A: **Today** was **awful**!
B: **Why**? *What **happened***?
A: **Well**, first the **bus** was late, then …
6 A: I was walking by the **river** one day last **week**, down near the **bridge**, you **know**?
B: ***Yes***?
A: And I heard a sort of loud **noise** in the **water** …

46.2 A: I was lying in **bed** last night, round about **midnight**, and I heard a knock at the **door**.

B: **Oh**? *Did you*?

A: **Yes**, and I thought, 'That's **unusual**.'

B: *What did you do*?

A: **Well**, I went downstairs, and looked through the **window**, and it was **dark**, of **course**, but I could see a **bus** in the street, with its **lights** off and no **passengers**, and a **man** standing at my door, with a sort of official-looking **cap** on his head.

B: *Sorry*?

A: A **cap**, you **know**, like **bus** drivers wear.

B: **Oh**, I see. *What happened*?

A: **Well**, I opened the **door**, and he said, 'Mr **Johnson**?', and I said, '**Yes**?' And he said, 'Here's your **wallet**. I finished **work** at **midnight** and I **found** it on my **bus**.' What do you think about **that**?

B: *That's amazing*!

47.1 1 A: How was the match?

B: The first half was **quite** good, but the second half was **really** good.

2 A: How was the match?

B: The first half was quite **good**, but the second half was **terrible**.

3 A: Can I come and discuss this tomorrow?

B: **I** won't be here tomorrow, but my **colleague** will be.

4 A: Can I come and discuss this tomorrow?

B: I won't be here **tomorrow**, but I'll be back on **Thursday**.

5 A: Have you seen that film?

B: I've **seen** it, but I can't **remember** much about it.

6 A: Have you seen that film?

B: I **haven't** seen it, but I'd **like** to.

7 A: Are you having trouble?

B: I know what this word **means**, but I don't know how to **pronounce** it.

8 A: Are you having trouble?

B: I know what **this** word means, but I don't know any of the **others**!

9 A: What did you think?

B: I **liked** the film, but I didn't really **understand** it.

10 A: What did you think?

B: I liked the **film**, but the **seats** were so uncomfortable!

11 A: I'd like to go to Britain to study for a month or two – or maybe even a year!

B: I'd like to go to Britain for a **month**, but not for a **year**.

12 A: I'd like to go to Britain to study for a month or two – or maybe even a year!

B: I'd like to go to **Britain**, but I'd rather go to **America**.

47.2

1 A: What's the answer – three hundred and eighty-five?
B: No – three hundred and **ninety**-five.

2 A: After you.
B: No – after **you**.

3 A: You went to the disco with Steve last night, didn't you?
B: I didn't **go** with him – I **met** him there.

4 A: Do you live in London?
B: Well, not really **in** London, just **outside**.

5 A: You said go over the bridge.
B: No, I said go **under** the bridge.

6 A: Were there really fifty people at your birthday party?
B: Well, **nearly** fifty, I think.

7 A: What's 'Thank you' in Italian?
B: I can't **speak** Italian.

8 A: How many times have you been to England?
B: I've **never** been to England.

9 A: Was the course expensive?
B: Well, my school paid for the **course**, but the **travel** cost quite a lot.

10 A: How much should I bring – fifty pounds?
B: You'll need at **least** fifty.

48.1

1 A: Do you like westerns?
B: **Me**? I can't **stand** westerns!

2 A: It's stopped raining.
B: **Really**? I don't **believe** it!

3 A: Is it the first time you've been here?
B: The **first** – and probably the **last**!

4 A: You know the city pretty well, don't you?
B: **Me**? I've never **been** here before!

5 A: What are twelve elevens?
B: Don't ask **me**! I'm **hopeless** with numbers!

6 A: It's two pounds fifty for a cup of coffee.
B: **Two fifty**? That's **ridiculous**!

7 A: Were the shops busy today?
B: **Busy**? They were almost **empty**!

8 A: Do you like rap music?
B: **Like** it? I think it's **awful**!

49.2

1 A: Can I **help** you?
B: **No, thanks**, I'm just **looking**.

2 B: I'll take **this, please**.
A: **Sure**. Anything **else**?
B: **No, thanks**, that's all.

3 A: That's fifteen **forty altogether**.
B: **Here** you **are**.

4 A: Here's your **change**.
B: Thank **you**.

5 A: **See** you.
B: **Bye**.

49.3 A: Excuse **me**.
B: **Yes**?
A: Can you tell me the way to the **station**, **please**?
B: **Yes**, you just go along this **road**, cross the **bridge** over the **river** and there's a big **park** on your **left**, you **know**? **Well**, you go through the **park** and the **station's** just on the other **side**.
A: Is it **far**?
B: **No**, not **very** far.
A: **OK**, so I go along this **road**, cross the **bridge** and through the **park** – **right**?
B: That's **right**.
A: Thanks very **much**.
B: You're **welcome**. **Bye**.
A: **Bye**.

49.4 A: All **right**?
B: **Yes**.
A: Not **nervous**?
B: A **bit**.
A: Don't **worry**. It'll be **fine**.
B: I **hope** so.
A: **Right**. Let's **start**. Are you **ready**?
B: I **think** so.
A: **OK**. The first question **is** ... What's your **name**?
B: My **name**? ... It's ... Jack **Johnson**.
A: That's **right**! Well **done**! **Difficult**?
B: **Well**, not **too** bad.
A: **Right**. The **second** question is ... What's 37,548 × 7,726?
B: **What**!

50.2

it was!	usually
of course!	is it?
definitely	maybe
	really?
	I think so
	did you?
	sometimes

50.3

That's great!	That's strange.
That's fantastic!	That's interesting.
That's marvellous!	That's good news!
	That's kind of you!
	That's a good idea.

E3 Sound pairs

音素对比 1

1	leave	live
2	live	live
3	feel	fill
4	fill	feel
5	filled	field
6	field	field
7	Tim	team
8	seat	
9	will	
10	eat	
11	cheap	
12	litter	

音素对比 2

1	near	knee
2	near	knee
3	B	beer
4	beer	beer
5	D	dear
6	dear	D
7	E	E
8	cheers	
9	near	
10	we	
11	D	
12	here	

音素对比 3

1	sit	sit
2	set	sit
3	lift	left
4	left	lift
5	litter	litter
6	letter	letter
7	lesson	listen
8	F	
9	six	
10	N	
11	fill	
12	desk	

音素对比 4

1	/uː/	/uː/
2	/uː/	/ʊ/
3	pull	pool
4	pull	pool
5	fool	full
6	full	full
7	look	Luke
8	/ʊ/	
9	/uː/	
10	pull	
11	pull	
12	fool	

音素对比 5

1	/ʊ/	/ʌ/
2	/ʊ/	/ʊ/
3	luck	look
4	look	look
5	look	luck
6	book	book
7	book	buck
8	/ʌ/	
9	/ʊ/	
10	look	
11	look	
12	book	

音素对比 6

1	boot	boat
2	boat	boot
3	soap	soup
4	soup	soap
5	show	show
6	shoe	show
7	throw	through
8	toe	
9	grew	
10	blue	
11	boots	
12	shows	

音素对比 7

1	hat	heart
2	heart	heart
3	March	match
4	match	March
5	park	park
6	pack	park
7	had	hard
8	heart	
9	match	
10	park	
11	hard	
12	had	

音素对比 8

1	far	four
2	far	four
3	are	are
4	or	or
5	farm	form
6	form	farm
7	star	store
8	four	
9	or	
10	R	
11	port	
12	store	

音素对比 9

1	cut	cat
2	cut	cut
3	cap	cap
4	cup	cap
5	match	match
6	match	much
7	ran	run
8	much	
9	match	
10	run	
11	sang	
12	rung	

音素对比 10

1	lock	lock
2	luck	lock
3	not	not
4	nut	nut
5	gone	gun
6	gun	gone
7	shut	shot
8	lock	
9	box	
10	rung	
11	bus	
12	song	

音素对比 11

1	/ɒ/	/əʊ/
2	/əʊ/	/əʊ/
3	not	not
4	coast	cost
5	want	want
6	note	
7	cost	
8	want	

音素对比 12

1	or	oh
2	oh	or
3	caught	caught
4	coat	caught
5	walk	walk
6	so	saw
7	so	so
8	oh	
9	ball	
10	caught	
11	bought	
12	cold	

音素对比 13

1	/ɒ/	/ɒ/
2	/ɒ/	/ɔː/
3	shot	short
4	pot	port
5	spot	spot
6	short	
7	pot	
8	sport	

音素对比 14

1	work	work
2	walk	work
3	saw	sir
4	saw	saw
5	born	born
6	born	burn
7	shirt	short
8	walk	
9	burn	
10	shirt	
11	bird	
12	walked	

音素对比 15

1	man	men
2	men	man
3	had	had
4	had	head
5	said	sad
6	sad	sad
7	pen	pen
8	men	
9	sad	
10	mat	
11	set	
12	bed	

音素对比 16

1	paper	pepper
2	pepper	paper
3	gate	gate
4	get	gate
5	wet	wait
6	wait	wet
7	late	late
8	pen	
9	main	
10	later	
11	pepper	
12	age	

音素对比 17

1	head	heard
2	heard	heard
3	bed	bird
4	bed	bird
5	turn	ten
6	turn	turn
7	went	weren't
8	bed	
9	turn	
10	weren't	
11	worst	
12	lend	

音素对比 18

1	/ʌ/	/e/
2	better	better
3	butter	better
4	one	when
5	again	a gun
6	better	
7	one	
8	nut	

音素对比 19

1	/ɜː/	/æ/
2	hat	hat
3	hat	hurt
4	bad	bird
5	heard	heard
6	hurt	
7	bird	
8	heard	

音素对比 20

1	/ɜː/	/ɪə/
2	beard	beard
3	bird	beard
4	here	here
5	we're	were
6	beard	
7	her	
8	were	

音素对比 21

1	wear	way
2	way	wear
3	A	A
4	A	air
5	stay	stair
6	stair	stay
7	hey!	hair
8	stair	
9	hair	
10	there	
11	K	
12	no way	

音素对比 22

1	May	May
2	my	May
3	why	why
4	way	why
5	day	die
6	die	die
7	A	I
8	I	
9	white	
10	lake	
11	buy	
12	high	

音素对比 23

1	pears	pears
2	bears	pears
3	pay	bay
4	bay	pay
5	pen	pen
6	Ben	Ben
7	B	P
8	pay	
9	Ben	
10	B	
11	buy	
12	pack	

音素对比 24

1	fair	pear
2	pear	fair
3	full	full
4	full	pull
5	past	fast
6	fast	fast
7	coffee	copy
8	pear	
9	full	
10	past	
11	feet	
12	coffee	

音素对比 25

1	watch	watch
2	what's	watch
3	toes	toes
4	chose	toes
5	test	chest
6	chest	chest
7	coats	coach
8	chose	
9	coat	
10	beach	
11	each	
12	eats	

音素对比 26

1	try	dry
2	die	tie
3	die	die
4	down	down
5	town	down
6	white	wide
7	wide	wide
8	writing	
9	two	
10	D	
11	road	
12	said	

音素对比 27

1	taught	thought
2	taught	taught
3	three	tree
4	three	three
5	boat	both
6	both	boat
7	mats	maths
8	taught	
9	thought	
10	three	
11	boat	
12	mats	

音素对比 28

1	gold	cold
2	gold	gold
3	back	back
4	bag	back
5	class	glass
6	glass	glass
7	docks	docks
8	cold	
9	bag	
10	glass	
11	class	
12	dogs	

音素对比 29

1	view	few
2	few	few
3	leaf	leave
4	leave	leave
5	very	ferry
6	ferry	ferry
7	lift	lift
8	view	
9	leaf	
10	very	
11	safe	
12	lived	

音素对比 30

1	sing	thing
2	sing	thing
3	thought	thought
4	sort	thought
5	thick	sick
6	sick	thick
7	mouth	mouse
8	sing	
9	thought	
10	thick	
11	thumb	
12	mouse	

音素对比 31

1	plays	plays
2	plays	place
3	Sue	zoo
4	zoo	zoo
5	ice	ice
6	eyes	eyes
7	rise	rise
8	place	
9	zoo	
10	niece	
11	peas	
12	eyes	

音素对比 32

1	so	show
2	show	so
3	sheet	seat
4	seat	seat
5	short	short
6	sort	short
7	Sue	shoe
8	show	
9	sheet	
10	suit	
11	save	
12	shine	

音素对比 33

1 shoes	choose
2 shoes	shoes
3 chip	chip
4 ship	chip
5 catch	cash
6 catch	cash
7 wash	wash
8 shoes	
9 chair	
10 cheap	
11 catch	
12 watch	

音素对比 34

1 ran	rang
2 ran	rang
3 thing	thin
4 thin	thin
5 thing	thing
6 think	thing
7 sink	sing
8 ran	
9 thin	
10 think	
11 sing	
12 sung	

音素对比 35

1 night	might
2 might	might
3 me	knee
4 knee	me
5 sun	sun
6 some	sun
7 some	sung
8 night	
9 mice	
10 nine	
11 sung	
12 swim	

音素对比 36

1 light	light
2 light	right
3 long	wrong
4 wrong	wrong
5 collect	collect
6 collect	correct
7 reader	leader
8 light	
9 long	
10 rock	
11 correct	
12 arrive	

音素对比 37

1 A	hey!
2 hey!	A
3 hear	hear
4 ear	ear
5 eye	eye
6 high	high
7 air	hair
8 A	
9 heating	
10 old	
11 eight	
12 heart	

E5 The alphabet

E5.1

b	bee
c	see
i	eye
o	oh
p	pea
q	queue
r	are
t	tea
u	you
y	why

E5.2 **1** w **2** j **3** y

E5.3 **1** l **2** j **3** x **4** f **5** z **6** b **7** q **8** d **9** t **10** k **11** h **12** p

E5.4 **1** bird **2** use **3** years **4** sixty **5** choose **6** key **7** guess **8** wait **9** jar **10** cheque **11** wave **12** edge

E6 Pronouncing numbers

E6.1
1 106
2 918
3 11,690
4 4,004
5 350,000

E6.2
1 1540
2 1603
3 1800
4 1945
5 2003

E6.3
1 0378 464 952
2 0208 56 77 82 03
3 01446 847 392
4 0048 57 766 5412
5 0500 2875 9104

E6.4
1 32°
2 –11°
3 August 20th / 20 August
4 21st
5 $5\frac{3}{4}$
6 1.6093
7 67.7%
8 $\frac{2}{3}$

E8 Homophones

1 *Bye* for now. / What did you *buy*?
2 *Write* your name. / That's *right*.
3 I can't *see*. / The deep blue *sea*.
4 When shall we *meet*? / Do you eat *meat*?
5 *Check* the answers. / Pay by *cheque*.
6 I don't know what to *wear*. / *Where* are you?
7 I don't *know*. / *No*, I don't.
8 Come *here*. / I can't *hear* you.
9 Our *new* house. / I *knew* the answer.
10 I feel *weak*. / The end of the *week*.

Acknowledgements

I would like to thank Frances Amrani for commissioning and guiding the project and Alison Silver for her assiduous and supportive editorial work.

I would also like to thank the following reviewers for their feedback on the first version of the manuscript:
Melanie Bell, Cambridge, UK
Barbara Bradford, Kent, UK
David Hill, Sydney, Australia
Jean Meakin, Buckinghamshire, UK
Gillian Paterson, Paris, France

The IATEFL Pronunciation Special Interest Group (PronSIG) has been a constant source of inspiration and opportunity for experimentation over the past 20 years (see www.iatefl.org).

Jonathan Marks 2007

James Richardson produced the audio recordings at Studio AVP, London.

Illustrations by Jo Blake, Mark Draisey, Julian Mosedale and David Shenton

Cover design by Dale Tomlinson

Designed and typeset by Kamae Design, Oxford

“剑桥国际英语语音”完全掌握系列丛书

《剑桥国际英语语音在用（初级）》 《剑桥国际英语语音在用（中级）》 《剑桥国际英语语音在用（高级）》	CD—ROM版
《剑桥国际英语语音入门·Tree or Three？》 《剑桥国际英语语音教程·英音版·Ship or Sheep？》 《剑桥国际英语语音教程·美音版·Pronunciation Pairs》	两个版本： 1.MP3版 2.CD—ROM升级版

《剑桥国际英语语音在用》（English Pronunciation in Use）是享誉世界、全球最为畅销的英语语音系列教材，专门为非英语国家的英语学习者编写，共含初级、中级和高级三册。三册书体现了三个阶段的系统的英语语音学习，但每一册也可自成体系，学习者可以根据自己的水平和需要选择。本系列可用于课堂教学，也适用于自学。

《剑桥国际英语语音在用（初级）》适合初级英语学习者使用。本书涉及英语语音的各个方面，包括音素的发音、单词的重音、口语的连贯、语调等。

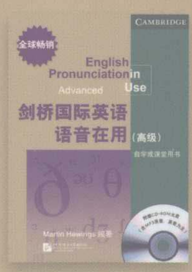
本书具有以下特色：

- 内容编排注重科学性和趣味性的结合。本书通过口型图、发音对比、发音实例等手段科学地讲解各个语音点。书中配有几百幅插图和漫画，并运用各种符号形象地展示发音要领，提高学习的趣味性。
- 突出语境学习，学以致用。新颖的语料均取自当今学习、生活、工作中的真实场景，可模仿性和实用性强。
- 练习题丰富多样，注重技巧训练。每一单元双页设计：左页讲解，右页提供各种练习。学习者通过各类语音技巧的练习，随时检测学习成果并感受进步。不同的题型有助于调整学习节奏，提高学习效率。
- 以英式发音为主，兼顾其他口音。本书在以BBC英语作为标准发音的同时，还让学习者接触到其他口音的英语。
- 以口语为主，兼顾听力。本书强调：语音对于口语和听力都非常重要。除了大量的发音练习，书中还提供听力训练，帮助学习者在学习说标准的BBC英语的同时提高听力技能。
- 附赠的CD—ROM含有大量课内外练习和语音游戏。互动学习，其乐无穷！

in Use







CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
www.cambridge.org

图书策划：李 亮
责任编辑：李 亮
封面设计：冯志才

ISBN 978-7-5619-3326-8

欢迎登录北京语言大学出版社网站
http://www.blcup.com

定价：29.90元